

---

A  
XHOSA PHRASE BOOK  
AND VOCABULARY

BY  
JAMES STEWART  
MISSIONARY

THE LOVEDALE PRESS

---

AFRICANA SURVIVAL SOCIETY

EAA

NO. 64/7779 CLASSA 496.371103

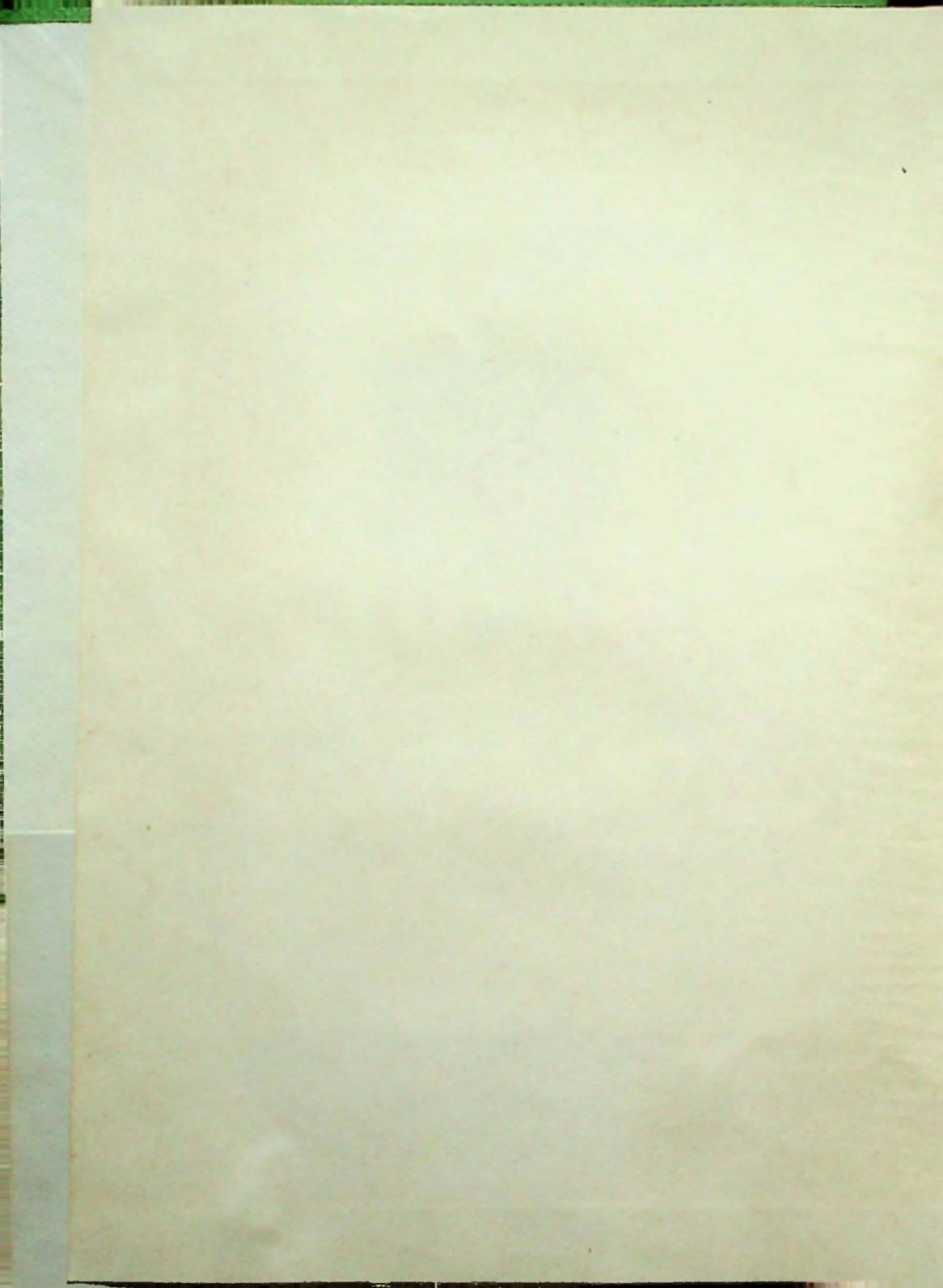
STE



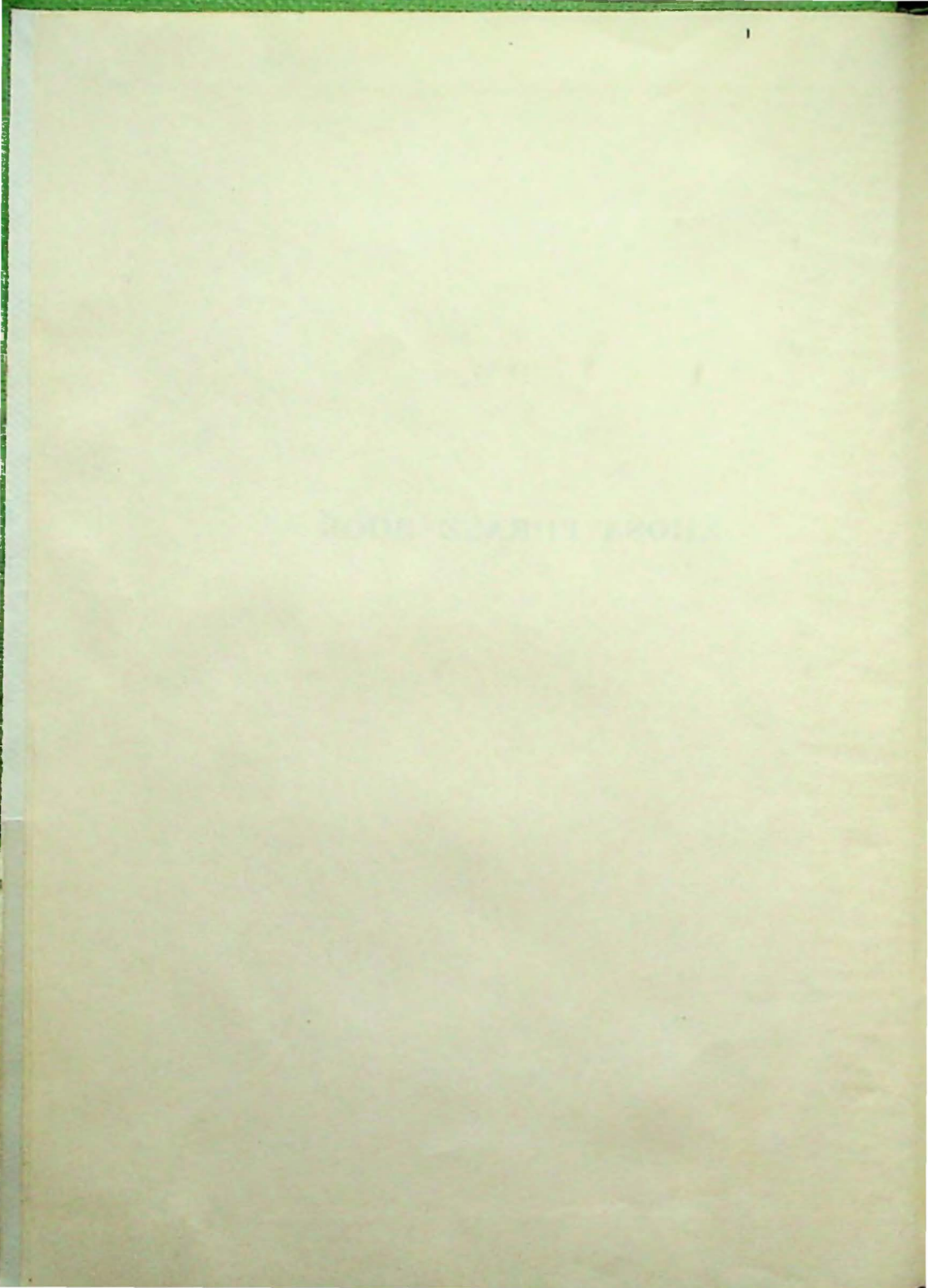
UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN LIBRARIES

DATE DUE

\* TO STAY IN THE LIBRARY \*



XHOSA PHRASE BOOK



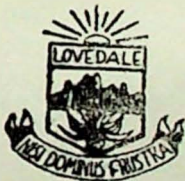
# XHOSA PHRASE BOOK

(FORMERLY KNOWN AS THE "KAFIR PHRASE  
BOOK")

BY  
**JAMES STEWART**  
*Missionary*

REVISED AND TRANSPOSED INTO THE STANDARD XHOSA SPELLING  
By B. B. MDLEDLE

(ENGLISH—XHOSA)



THE LOVEDALE PRESS  
1961

*PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION.*

Frequent inquiries have for some considerable time been made for an English-Kafir Phrase Book, and the following pages have been prepared to meet that want. There have been two or three smaller phrase books, but they are now all out of print.

The arrangement adopted in the present instance is different from that of its predecessors. A miscellaneous collection of unrelated phrases is difficult to remember. In this small book each section deals with a separate subject, and the object aimed at is to afford some working knowledge of the Kafir language for every-day use.

J.S.

LOVEDALE, SOUTH AFRICA,  
March, 1899.

64/7779

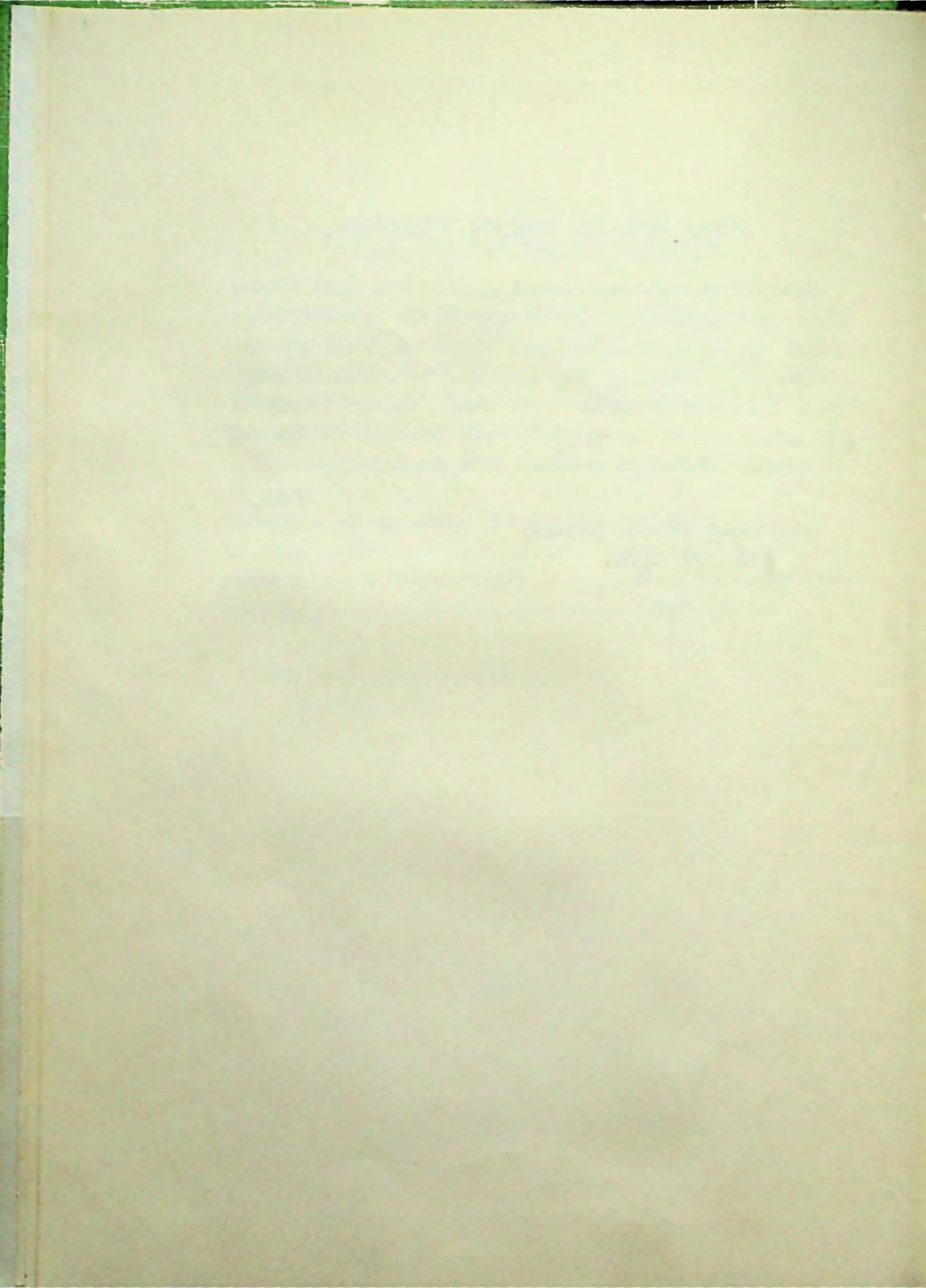


*PREFACE TO SIXTH EDITION.*

CERTAIN changes and emendations in this Kafir Phrase Book contemplated by the author, in the press of other duties during the closing years of his life, were left uncompleted. Whether they now can be carried through from his notes remains to be seen. In the meantime the exhaustion of the supply on sale demands the issuing of another edition of the book as it stands.

J.H.

LOVEDALE, SOUTH AFRICA,  
October, 1906.



## CONTENTS.

---

	<i>Page</i>
COMMON EVERY-DAY EXPRESSIONS ..	9
BREAKFAST .. .. .	10
DINNER .. .. .	11
DIRECTIONS TO SERVANTS ..	14
THE WEATHER ..	15
TIME—DAY, NIGHT .. .. .	16
THE JOURNEY .. .. .	18
THE ARRIVAL .. .. .	19
ABOUT WORK IN THE HOUSE .. .. .	20
ABOUT WORK WITH HORSES .. .. .	21
ABOUT WORKING IN THE GARDEN ..	23
AN ACCIDENT .. .. .	23
LETTERS AND THE POST .. .. .	24
GETTING UP IN THE MORNING ..	26
AWAKING IN THE MORNING ..	27
SCHOOL,—IN SCHOOL .. .. .	28
SICKNESS .. .. .	30
CATTLE,—ABOUT CATTLE .. .. .	31
ABOUT MILKING COWS .. .. .	32
ABOUT ASKING THE WAY .. .. .	33
THE CHURCH,—ABOUT GOING TO CHURCH	33
TO ASK ABOUT RELATIONS ..	36
MEDICINE .. .. .	37
ABOUT THE DAYS OF THE WEEK ..	38
ABOUT WORK IN THE FIELDS .. .. .	39

ABOUT SPEAKING XHOSA	..	..	41
ABOUT COLOURS	..	..	42
SPRING,—SUMMER	..	..	44
AUTUMN,—WINTER	..	..	44
ABOUT THE QUESTION—HOW MANY ?	..		45
ABOUT THE QUESTION—WHERE ?	..		46
ABOUT THE QUESTION—WHAT ?	..		48
ABOUT THE WORDS—WHO, WHOM, WHICH			50
ABOUT THE QUESTION—WHEN ?	..	..	51
ABOUT THE QUESTIONS—HOW, HOW IS IT ?			53
HERE,—THERE	..	..	55
ABOUT WORK—TRADES	.	..	55
ADVERTISEMENTS—WANTED	..	..	56
EAST,—WEST	..	..	57
NORTH,—SOUTH	..	..	58
SHORT EXPRESSIONS FREQUENTLY USED	..		58
SOME PROVERBIAL AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS			62
SOME EXPLANATORY NOTES	..	..	63

---

# XHOSA PHRASE BOOK

---

No. 1.

## Common Every-Day Expressions

Good morning, friend,	Molo, wethu. <sup>1</sup>
Women greeting one another say for good afternoon,	Bhota. (Plu. Bhotani).
Good night,	Ronani.
How are you to-day?	Unjani na namhlanje?
Are you well?	Uphilile na?
Are you still well?	Usaphilile na?
Are you quite well?	Uphilile na kanye?
Yes, I am quite well,	Ewe, ndiphilile kanye.
No, I am sick,	Hayi, ndiyafa.
I am still sick,	Ndisafa.
Where do you come from?	Uvelaphi na <i>or</i> ngaphi na?
I come from Port Elizabeth,	Ndivela eBhayi.
Where are you going to?	Uyaphi na <i>or</i> uyangaphi na?
I am going beyond the Kei,	Ndiya phesheya kweNciba.
Where do you come from?	Nivelaphi na? (Plural).
We come from Grahamstown,	Sivela eRini.
Where are you going to?	Niyangaphi na <i>or</i> niyaphi na?
We are going to Queenstown,	Siya <u>kwa</u> Komani. <i>kubani</i> .
What do you want, or wish?	Ufuna ntoni na?
We want work,	Sifuna umsebenzi.
We want food,	Sifuna ukutya.
I am in want of money,	Ndiyiswele imali.

See Explanatory and Grammatical Notes at the end for references to figures

No. 2.

## Breakfast.

Isidlo sakusasa ;  
or Iblekkesi.

This chapter is about (speaks about) food and cooking,	Esi sahluko sithetha ngokutya nangokupheka.
Breakfast,	Isidlo sakusasa ; or iblekkesi.
Where is the cook ?	Uphi na umpheki ?
She is outside the door,	Ungaphandle kwendlu.
Call her,	Mbize.
Would you call her to come into the house ?	Khawumbize angene endlwini.
You are called,	Uyabizwa.
Is the breakfast ready ?	Iblekkesi seyilungile na ?
Yes, Madam. Yes, Sir,	Ewe, Nkosikazi. Ewe, Nkosi.
Boil some eggs,	Pheka amaqanda.
Boil six eggs,	Pheka amaqanda amathandathu.
Boil them soft,	Wapheke athambe.
Boil them hard,	Wapheke abe lukhuni.
I also want some bacon,	Ndifuna kanjako inyama yehangu.
I want you to toast some bread on the coals,	Ndifuna ukuba woje isonka emalahleni. <sup>2</sup>
Fry the bacon with the eggs,	Qhotsa inyama yehangu kunye namaqanda.
Make tea and coffee,	Yenza iti nekofu.
Call the other girl,	Biza enye intombazana.
Clean those knives,	Sula ezo mela ; or sula ezo zishetshe.
Strain the milk,	Hluza ubisi.
Pour it into that dish,	Lugalele kweso sitya.
Cream,	Ucambu.
Take off the cream,	Yongula ucambu ; or longule ucambu.
Wipe the table,	Sula itafle.

Put the table-cloth on the table,	Beka ilaphu letafile etafileni.
Bring in the cups and plates, and knives and spoons.	Zisa, <i>or</i> yiza neendebe neepleti neemela, namagxebeka.
Wait to help at the table,	Ncedisa etafileni ; <i>or</i> hlala ukuba uncede etafileni.
Take away the dishes,	Susa izitya.
Take away those things,	Susa ezo zinto ; <i>or</i> ezo nto.
Shake the table-cloth,	Vuthulula ilaphu letafile.
Sweep the floor,	T'shayel' indlu.
After that, go and wash the dishes.	Emva koko, hamba uye uhlamb izitya ; <i>or</i> emva koko yiya kuhlamba izitya.

No. 3.

<b>Dinner.</b>	<b>Isidlo semini enkulu ; <i>or</i> Idinala.</b>
Is dinner ready ?	Idinala seyilungile na ; <i>or</i> ilungisiwe na idinala ?
What is there for dinner ?	Yintoni na idinala ; <i>or</i> kukho ntoni na edinaleni ?
There is soup and boiled meat,	Kukho umhluzi nenyama ephekiweyo.
There is roasted meat and vegetables, potatoes, and pudding,	Kukho inyama eyojiweyo nemi-funo itapile, nepudini.
Is the meat roasted ?	Inyama yojiwe na ?
Is the soup ready ?	Umhluzi ulungisiwe na ?
The dinner is quite ready,	Idinala seyilungile.
It is not quite ready,	Ayikalungi kakuhle.
It is quite ready,	Seyilungile kanye.
Bring it in now,	Yiza nayo ( <i>or</i> yizise) ngoku.
Bring it immediately,	Yiza nayo ( <i>or</i> yizise) kwangoku.
Bring it after a little while,	Yiza nayo ( <i>or</i> yizise) emva kwexesha elincinane.

Have you potatoes ?	Unazo na iitapile ?
No ; there are none,	Hayi ; azikho.
Buy some to-morrow at the shop,	Zithenge ngomso evenkileni.
Bring the salt and bread,	Zisa ityuwa nesonka.
I like roasted meat,	Ndithanda <i>or</i> ndiyayithanda inyama eyojiweyo.
Take some bread, and some potatoes and pumpkin,	Thabatha isonka, neetapile ne-thanga.
You eat very little,	Utya kancinane.
I have no appetite,	Andithandi kudla.
I am not hungry,	Andilambile.
I am very hungry,	Ndilambe kunene.
This meat is very good,	Le nyama ilunge kakhulu ; <i>or</i> ilunge kunene.
Will you take some more ?	Usafuna na ; <i>or</i> ndibuye ndikuphe na ?
This bread is very good,	Esi sonka silungile kakhulu ; <i>or</i> silunge kunene.
This bread is not good,	Esi sonka asilungile.
It is musty,	Singwevu <i>or</i> singundile.
I am very thirsty,	Ndinxaniwe kakhulu.
Give me some water,	Ndiphe amanzi.
Give me sweet milk ; sour,	Ndiphe ubisi ; amasi.
I thank you,	Ndiyakubulela ; <i>or</i> Enkosi.

## No. 4.

Dinner.

Isidlo semini enkulu.

*Continued*

Bring another knife and fork and a spoon,	Zisa esinye isitshetshe nefolo-khwe negxebeka.
Set the chairs at the table,	Beka izitulo ngasetafileni.
Call in the children,	Babize abantwana bangene.
Call in all the people,	Babize bonke abantu bangene.



John is not here,	UJohn akakho.
Go and look for him,	Hamba umfune.
Do you know where he is ?	Uyazi na apho akhona ?
Do you know where they are ?	Uyazi na apho bakhona ?
Where is my spoon ?	Icephe lam liphi na ? <i>or</i> igxebeka lam liphi na ?
It is beneath the table,	Liphantsi kwetafile.
Where was the spoon ?	Beliphi na ; <i>or</i> libe liphi na icephe ?
It was beneath the chair,	Beliphantsi, <i>or</i> libe liphantsi kwesitulo.
Where is my knife ?	Isitshetshe sam siphi na ? <i>or</i> imela yam iphi na ?
Here it is,	Nasi <i>or</i> nantsi.
Where was it ?	Besiphi na ? <i>or</i> sibe siphi na ? <i>or</i> ibiphi na ? <i>or</i> ibe iphi na ?
It is beneath the napkin,	Siphantsi ; <i>or</i> iphantsi kweqhiya.
It was beneath the chairs,	Besiphantsi kwezitulo ; <i>or</i> sibe siphantsi kwezitulo.
Sit down and let us begin,	Hlalani phantsi siqale.
Do you like roasted meat <i>or</i> do you like boiled meat ?	Uyayithanda na inyama eyojiweyo, uthand' ephekiweyo kusini na ?
Would you give me (some) bread ?	Ungakhe undiphe isonka ?
Would you give me (some) salt ?	Ungakhe undiphe ityuwa ?
Let us ask this stranger to dinner,	Masimeme lo wasemzini ukuba atye nathi isidlo sasemini.
It is right that we should do so,	Kufanele <i>or</i> kulungile ukuba senje njalo.
A stranger needs help,	Owasemzini uswele uncedo.
it is right to be kind to a stranger,	Kulungile ukuphatha owasemzini ngobubele.
We ought to help the poor,	Sifanele ukuwanceda amahlwempu.
We ought to be kind to all,	Sifanele ukuba nobubele kubo bonke.

No. 5.

## Directions to Servants.

## Imiyalelo kwizicaka

Bring wood,	Zisani iinkuni.
Go outside and bring in wood,	Phuma ungenise iinkuni.
Make, light <i>or</i> kindle a fire,	Basa <i>or</i> phemba umlilo.
Bring in water,	Ngenisa amanzi.
Fill the kettle with water,	Zalisa iketile ngamanzi.
Put it on the fire,	Yibeke emlilweni.
Pour some water into this dish,	Galela amanzi kwesi sitya.
Pour out that dirty water on the ground,	Phalaza, <i>or</i> khupha <i>or</i> khuphela la manzi angcolileyo emhla- beni.
Throw the ashes into the ash- pit <i>or</i> rubbish-heap,	Lahla <i>or</i> khupha <i>or</i> khuphela uthuthu ezaleni.
Bring clean water, this is dirty,	Zisa amanzi amahle, la angcoli- le.
Boil the water,	Bilisa amanzi.
Bring hot water,	Zisa amanzi ashushu.
Bring lukewarm water,	Zisa amanzi adikidiki.
Bring slightly warm water,	Zisa amanzi afudumeleyo.
Bring boiling water,	Zisa amanzi abilayo.
Bring cold water for drinking,	Zisa amanzi abandayo okusela.
Pour a little into this cup <i>or</i> glass,	Galela abe mancinane kule ndebe <i>or</i> eglasini le.
Go for the milk,	Hamba uzise ubisi.
The milk is here already,	Ubisi selulapha.
I brought it before the six o'clock bell,	Ndiluzise phambi kwentsimbi yesithandathu.
I brought it at seven o'clock,	Ndiluzise ngeyure yesixhenxe.
Is the water boiling?	Amanzi ayabila na?
If it is not boiling, don't make the tea,	Ukuba akabili, mus' ukwenza ti.
You will spoil the tea,	Uya kuyona iti.

Make tea,	Yenza iti.
Make coffee,	Yenza ikofu.
If there is no tea, make coffee,	Ukuba ayikho iti yenza ikofu.
Are your hands clean ?	Izandla zakho zicocekile na ?
Are your hands dirty ?	Izandla zakho zingcolile na ?
Wash your hands,	Hlamba izandla zakho.
Cut the bread,	Sika isonka
Mince the meat,	Nqunqa inyama.
Pare the potatoes,	Chuba iitapile.
Finish your work soon,	Gqiba umsebenzi wakho kamsi- nya.

No. 6.

The Weather.	Izulu
Is it hot to-day ?	Kushushu namhlanje
Yes, it is very hot,	Ewe, kushushu kakhulu.
It was hot yesterday,	Bekushushu izolo.
It was not hot yesterday,	Bekungeshushu izolo.
Sit down,	Hlala phantsi.
Sit down in the shade,	Hlala phantsi emthunzini.
I am thirsty,	Ndinxaniwe.
Would you give me (some) water ?	Ungandipha na amanzi ?
Please give me (some) water to drink,	Khawundiphe amanzi ndisele.
It is cold to-day,	Kuyabanda namhlanje
It was not cold yesterday,	Bekungabandi izolo.
I am cold, <i>i.e.</i> , I feel cold,	Ndiyagodola.
I am hungry,	Ndilambile.
Come into the house,	Ngena endlwini.
Go into the house,	Yiya endlwini.
There is a fire there,	Kukho umlilo khona.
Bring in your things,	Zingenise izinto zakho ; <i>or</i> impahla yakho.

Come forward,	Sondela.
A fire makes the house warm,	Umlilo uyayifudumalisa indlu.
Come near the fire,	Sondela emlilweni.
Warm yourself; you are trembling with cold,	Zifudumeze; uyangcangcazela kukugodola.
I do not like the cold weather,	Andiyithandi ingqele.
Now we are comfortable,	Sonwabile ngoku.

## No. 7.

Time. Day. Night.	Ixesha. Umhla. Ubusuku.
Ask what time, or o'clock, it is,	Buza ukuba lixesha lini na.
It is seven o'clock,	Lixesha lesixhenxe; <i>or</i> yiyure yesixhenxe.
It is ten o'clock,	Lixesha leshumi; <i>or</i> yiyure yeshumi.
A day—of twenty-four hours,	Umhla; pl. imihla; <i>or</i> usuku, pl. iintsuku.
A day—period of daylight,	Imini.
In the day time,	Emini.
Mid-day; at mid-day,	Imini enkulu; emini enkulu.
Daily,	Imihla ngemihla.
Every-day,	Imihla yonke.
It is now mid-day,	Yimini enkulu ngoku; <i>or</i> kusemini enkulu.
Man's life is a day only,	Ubomi bomntu ngumhla kuphela.
Sunrise; the sun is rising,	Ukuphuma kwelanga; ilanga liyaphuma.
Sunset; the sun is setting,	Ukutshona kwelanga; ilanga liyatshona.
It is sunset now,	Kukutshona kwelanga ngoku.
Many things happen between sunrise and sunset,	Kuhla izinto ezininzi phakathi kokuphuma nokutshona kwelanga.

Some are born, others die,	Abanye bayazalwa, abanye bayabhubha.
Some do well, others do ill,	Abanye benza okulungileyo, abanye benza okubi.
Night ; midnight,	Ubusuku ; phakathi kobusuku.
It is night now,	Kusebusuku ngoku.
That happened at midnight,	Le nto ihle phakathi kobusuku.
Now ; then,	Ngoku ; oko.
The right or fitting time to do that is now,	Ixesha elifanelekileyo lokwenza oko lingoku.
Yesterday ; to-morrow,	Izolo ; ngomso.
Last night,	Phezolo ; <i>or</i> izolo ngokuhlwa.
Yesterday evening,	Xa kuhlwayo izolo ; <i>or</i> ubusuku obugqithileyo.
He came last night and will go away to-morrow morning,	Ufike phezolo, uya kumka ngomso kusasa.
Afternoon, <i>lit.</i> the going away of the sun,	Ukumka kwelanga.
He died in the afternoon, yesterday,	Ubhubhe ekumkeni kwelanga izolo.
Long ago,	Kudala.
That was done long ago,	Loo nto yenziwa kudala ; <i>or</i> oko kwenziwa kudala.
That thing happened long ago,	Loo nto yehla kudala.
There were people in the world long ago,	Kwakukho abantu elizweni kudala.
There were men here this morning,	Bekukho amadoda apha kusasa nje.
There are people in the world to-day,	Kukho abantu elizweni namhlanje.
There were people alive yesterday who are dead to-day,	Bekukho abantu abebephila izolo ababhubhileyo namhlanje.
Many people die very suddenly,	Abantu abaninzi bafa ngesiquphe ; <i>or</i> ngebhaqo.

## The Journey.

## Uhambo

The journey is long,	Uhambo lude.
The journey is short,	Uhambo lufutshane.
When shall we arrive ?	Siya kufika nini na ?
Before mid-day,	Phambi kwemini enkulu.
At mid-day,	Emini enkulu.
After mid-day,	Emva kwemini enkulu.
At sunset,	Ukutshona kwelanga.
In two hours,	Ngeeyure ezimbini.
In one hour,	Ngeyure enye.
The road is good,	Indlela ilungile.
The road is very good,	Indlela ilunge kakhulu.
The road is bad,	Indlela imbi.
The road is very bad,	Indlela imbi kakhulu.
This road is bad here at this place,	Le ndlela imbi apha kule ndawo
The horses are tired,	Amahashe adiniwe.
The horses are not tired,	Amahashe akadiniwe.
One horse is tired,	Elinye ihashe lidiniwe.
One horse is lame,	Elinye ihashe liyaqhwarela.
That horse on the right hand is lame,	Elo hashe lingasekunene lisiqhwalala.
Stop, the harness is broken,	Yima, iintambo ziqhawukile.
Have you a knife ?	Unayo na imela ; <i>or</i> unaso na isitshetshe ?
I will try and mend the harness,	Ndiya kulinga ukuzithunga iintambo ; <i>or</i> iihanesi.
I want a riem,	Ndifuna intambo.
Cut a piece off the end and split it in the middle,	Nqamla incam yentambo, uyi-cande phakathi.
You are a good driver,	Ungumbhexeshi olungileyo.

You are not a good driver,	Akunguye umbhexeshi olungileyo.
In about an hour we shall reach home,	Ngeyure enye siya kufika ekhaya.
We are tired, hungry, and thirsty, but now the journey is ended,	Sidiniwe, silambile, sinxaniwe, kodwa ngoku uhambo luphelile.
Are you not glad the journey is ended ?	Akuvuyi na ukuba uhambo luphelile ?
Yes, I am very glad the journey is ended,	Ewe, ndiyavuyisa kakhulu uhambo luphelile nje.
We shall sleep well to-night,	Siya kulala kakuhle ngokuhlwa.

No. 9.

The Arrival.

Ukufika.

Now we have arrived,	Ngoku sifikile.
See your mother in the doorway,	Bona unyoko emnyango.
We have come very quickly,	Sihambe ngokukhawuleza kakhulu.
We have come very slowly,	Sihambe ngokucotha.
We have come in a round-about way,	Sihambe ngokuzekelela kakhulu.
Our friends are here first, <i>or</i> are before us,	Izihlobo zethu zifike kuqala, <i>or</i> zifike phambi kwethu.
Let us go into the house,	Masingene endlwini.
Let us first get out all the things from the cart,	Masikhuphe impahla yonke ekarini kuqala; <i>or</i> masikhuphe zonke izinto ekarini kuqala.
I don't see your father,	Andimboni uyihlo.
Come here, boy, and hold the horses,	Kwedini yizapha ubambe amahashe.
We have lost a small bag; I don't see it,	Silahle, <i>or</i> silahlekelwe yingxowa encinane; andiyiboni.
No, here it is; I put it out of the cart,	Hayi, nantsi ingxowa; ndayikhupha ekarini.

Boy, you must walk the horses about,	Kwedini uze uwahamba—hambi-se amahashe.
After that, give them water and their forage,	Emva koko, uwanike amanzi nehabile yawo.
One horse is a little chafed on the shoulder,	Elinye ihashe lityabukile kancinane egxalabeni.
Your child is very tired ; she will fall asleep soon.	Umntwana wakho udiniwe kakhulu ; uya kulala kamsinya.

## No. 10.

## About Work in the House. Ngomsebenzi Endlwini.

I want a boy to work in the house,	Ndifuna inkwenkwe yokusebenza endlwini.
His work will be to clean the boots ; and go messages ; and wait at the table,	Umsebenzi wayo uyakuba kukusula izihlangu ; nokuthunywa ; nokunceda etafileni.
Are you willing to do that ?	Uyavuma na ukukwenza oko ?
Yes, I am willing ; I have done that work before,	Ewe, ndiyavuma ; ndiwenzile loo msebenzi ngaphambili.
Who was your (last) master ?	Ngubani obe yinkosi yakho ?
It was Mr. Smith,	Ibe nguMr. Smith.
How long did you stay with him,	Wahlala naye ixesha elingakani na ?
I stayed two years ; six months ; eight months,	Ndahlala iminyaka emibini ; iinyanga ezintandathu ; iinyanga ezisibozo.
Have you a certificate, <i>lit.</i> , a paper of character ;	Unalo na iphepha lesimilo ?
Yes, I have it, here it is,	Ewe, ndinalo, nali.
What wages (money) do you want ?	Ufuna malini na ?
I want sixteen shillings a month,	Ndifuna ishumi elinesithandathu leesheleni ngenyanga.



I want a pound a month, That is too much ; I cannot give that, till I see how you work,	Ndifuna iponti ngenyanga. Loo mali ininzi ; <sup>10</sup> or yimali e- gqithileyo ; andinakho ukuku- nika, ndide ndibone umsebe- nzi wakho.
What will you give me ?	Uya kundinika ntoni na ; or uya kundinika malini na ?
I will give you fourteen shillings a month and your food,	Ndiya kukunika ishumi elinesine leesheleni ngenyanga, nokutya kwakho.
I agree to that, When will you come ?	Ndiyavuma kuloo nto. Uya kuza nini na ; or nini ?
I want you to come on the first of next month,	Ndifuna ukuba uze apha ngo- mhla wokuqala kwinyanga ezayo.
I will come then, at that time, Can you speak English ?	Ndiya kuza ke ngelo xesha. Uyakwazi na ukuthetha isi- Ngesi ?
No, I can speak Xhosa only,	Hayi, ndazi ukuthetha isiXhosa kuphela.
You ought to learn to speak English,	Ufanele ukufunda ukuthetha isiNgesi.
Yes, sir, I will try,	Ewe, nkosi ndiya kulinga.

## No. 11.

## About Work with Horses. Ngomsebenzi wamahashe

I want a man to look after, care for, my horses,	Ndifuna indoda yokukhangela amahashe am.
Do you know how to groom horses ?	Uyakwazi na ukusula amahashe ?
Yes, I know,	Ewe ndiyakwazi.
Can you drive a cart ?	Ungayiqhuba na ikari ?
Groom the horses now.	Sula amahashe ngoku.
You must groom the horses well everyday, night and morning,	Uze uwasule amahashe kakuhle imihla yonke, ngokuhlwa na- kusasa.

Take the horses to the river,	Thabatha amahashe uwase emlanjeni.
Give the horses water, <i>i.e.</i> make them drink,	Seza amahashe.
Don't gallop the horses when you take them to the river,	Mus' ukuwaphalisa amahashe xa uwasa emlanjeni.
Bring home the horses,	Godusa amahashe.
Get the cart ready that we may go,	Lungisa ikari size kuhamba.
But first clean the harness, and oil the wheels,	Kodwa kuqala sula iintambo udyobhe iivili ngamafutha.
Bring the horses out of the stable,	Khupha amahashe esitalini.
How is it? One horse is lame,	Kutheni? Elinye ihashe liyaqhwalela.
One horse is sick,	Elinye ihashe liyafa.
You did not say anything about this,	Akuthethanga nto ngale nto.
Put him in the stable and take that brown horse instead,	Lifake esitalini, uthabathe elaa hashe ligwangqa esikhundleni salo.
Feed the horses,	Nika ifula amahashe; <i>or</i> dlisa amahashe.
Bring out the saddle and the bridle,	Khupha isali nomkhala.
Is the horse ready?	Ihashe lilungile na?
Are the horses ready to go?	Alungile na amahashe ukuhamba?
Harness the horses; put them in the cart or spider,	Wafake iintambo amahashe wabophe ekarini.
Did they drink?	Aselile na?
No, they did not drink,	Hayi akaselanga.
Yes, they drank,	Ewe, aselile.

No. 12.

About Working in the Ngokusebenza emasimini.  
Garden,

<p>I want you to work in the garden to-day, There is work to be done in the garden now, Spring is coming, Begin and dig the ground, You ought to begin to-day, don't wait till to-morrow, Perhaps it will rain to-morrow,  Begin at once, Sow these seeds at this place, Plant potatoes over there, You must water the plants every day till they spring, Drive these goats out of the garden, Go and drive out these pigs, these horses, these cattle,</p>	<p>Ndifuna ukuba usebenze entsimini (esitiyeni) namhlanje. Kukho umsebenzi omawenziwe entsimini (esitiyeni) ngoku. Intlakohlaza iza kuthwasa. Qala ukumba umhlaba. Ngewuqala namhlanje; mus' ukulibala kude kube ngomso. Umhlawumbi kuya kuna ngomso, <i>or</i> iya kuna imvula ngomso. Qala kwangoku. Hlwayela ezi mbewu kule ndawo. Tyala iitapile phaya. Uze uzinkcenkceshele izityalo imihla yonke zide zihlume. Gxotha ezi bhokhwe ziphume esitiyeni. Yiya ugxotha ezi hangu, la mahashe, ezi nkomo ziphume.</p>
---	---

No. 13.

An Accident.

Ingozi.

<p>What is the matter? I am sent to tell you that the wagon is upset, I have come to tell you that the cart is broken, Is there anyone hurt? No, there is no one hurt, Yes, one man is hurt,</p>	<p>Yindawoni? <i>or</i> yintoni? Ndithunywe ukukuxelela ukuba inqwelo ibhukuqekile. Ndize kukuxelela ukuba ikazi yaphukile. Kukho mntu wenzakeleyo na? Hayi, akukho namnye owenzakeleyo. Ewe, omnye umntu wenzakele.</p>
--	--

The leg of one horse is broken,	Umlenze welinye ihashe waphukile.
A child is hurt,	Umntwana wenzakele.
Can I help you ?	Ndingakunceda na ?
Can you help me ?	Ungandinceda na ?
The only thing you can do is to go to the nearest house and ask for a cart and horses,	Into kuphela ongayenzayo kuya kwindlu ekufuphi, ucele ikari namahashe.
The only thing you can do to help me is to go for a doctor,	Into kuphela ongayenzayo ukundinceda kukuba uye egqireni.
Here are people coming to help you,	Naba abantu beze kukunceda.
They are the people who live in the house yonder on the hills,	Ngabantu abahlala endlwini ephezu kwenduli phaya.
Let us lift up the cart,	Masiphakamise ikari.
The axle is broken,	Iasi yaphukile.
The cart is very heavy,	Ikari inzima kakhulu.
Take out the things,	Khupha izinto <i>or</i> khupha impahla.
Now let us try again and lift all together at one time,	Ngoku masilinge kanjako, siphakamise sonke ngaxesha nye.
That's it ! Well done,	Heke ! Ngxatsho ke !

## No. 14.

## Letters and the Post. Incwadi neposi.

I want you to go to the Post Office.	Ndifuna uye ePosini.
Make haste. Come here,	Ngxama ; <i>or</i> khawuleza. Yizapha.
Make haste and take these letters to the Post.	Khawuleza use ezi ncwadi ePosini.
There are ten letters and two papers,	Kukho iincwadi ezilishumi namaphepha amabini.
Wait a little ; there is another letter,	Khawenze kuhle ; kusekho enye incwadi.
Go to the Post Office and bring my letters,	Yiya ePosini, uze neencwadi zam.

May I go with the letters to the Post Office now ?	Ndihambe na neencwadi ze- Posi ngoku ?
You may not go now,	Akunakuhamba ngoku.
May he go with the post now ?	Ahambe na nePosi ngoku ?
He cannot go now,	Akanakuhamba ngoku.
He may go <i>i.e.</i> , let him go,	Makahambe.
May we go to the post in the afternoon ?	Siye na eposini emva kwemini enkulu ?
Yes, and take this parcel,	Ewe, uthabathe le pasile.
Come back quickly,	Ubuye msinya ; <i>or</i> ubuye ngo- kukhawuleza.
I met a man who wanted me to help him. His waggon is broken,	Ndihlangene nomntu ofuna ukuba ndimncede. Inqwelo yakhe yaphukile.
If you had walked quickly you would have been in good time,	Ukuba ubuhambe ngokungxa- ma ngewufike ngexesha elilungi- leyo.
Don't excuse yourself in that way,	Mus' ukuzithethelela ngolo hlo- bo.
You have come back in time, I am satisfied,	Ubuye ngexesha. Ndikholisekile.
Are you ready to go ?	Sewulungele ukuhamba na ?
Has the boy gone ?	Inkwenkwe imkile na ?
No ; the boy is here,	Hayi ; inkwenkwe ikho.
The boy was here just now.	Inkwenkwe ibikho ngokunje.
Where did he go ?	Iyephi na ?
How is it that you don't come when you are called ?	Kutheni na ungezi nje xa ubi- zwayo ?
How is it that you don't come although you are called ?	Kungani na ukuba ungezi noko ubizwayo ?
Don't forget what I say,	Mus' ukukulibala oku ndikuthe- thayo.
Don't trifle on the road,	Mus' ukufeketha endleleni.

## No. 15.

## Getting up in the Morning.

## Ukuvuka Kusasa.

Who is knocking ?	Ngubani onqonqozayo ?
It is I,	Ndim.
Come in,	Ngena.
It is time to get up,	Lixesha lokuvuka.
Awake, and get up,	Vuka, uphakame.
I wish you to wake me at six o'clock,	Ndifuna ukuba undivuse nge- yure yesithandathu.
Awake me at seven o'clock,	Uze undivuse ngeyure yesixhe- nxe.
Bring in coffee at that time,	Zisa ikofu ngelo xesha.
Bring in also some bread and butter,	Zisa kwanesonka nebhotolo.
Awake the boy, he is still sleeping,	Vusa inkwenkwe isalele.
Dress yourself,	Zinxibe ; or nxiba ngokwakho.
Put on a white shirt,	Nxiba ihempe emhlophe.
Go and wash your face and hands,	Hamba uhlambe ubuso bakho nezandla zakho.
There is water in the basin,	Kukho amanzi esityeni.
There is soap in the little dish,	Kukho isepha esityeni esincina- ne.
There is a towel hanging there on the wall,	Kukho itawuli ejingayo phaya eludongeni.
You have not combed your hair,	Akuzichazanga iinwele zakho.
After that, take your breakfast and go to school,	Emva koko, thabatha iblekfesi yakho uye esikolweni.
Your boots are outside the door,	Izihlangu zakho zingaphandle komnyango.
Don't delay,	Mus' ukulibala.
What are you doing ?	Wenza ntoni na ?
I am looking for my book,	Ndifuna incwadi yam.

No. 16.

(Continued)

Awaking in the Morning.	Ukuvuka Kusasa.
I have awaked you (too) early,	Ndikuvuse kwakusasa.
I was already awake,	Besendivukile.
I was asleep then,	Bendilele oko.
Did the girl tell you that I was here ?	Ikhe yakuxelela na intombazana ukuba ndibe ndilapha ?
Yes ; she told me,	Ewe ; indixelele.
Are you still going to wash ?	Usayakuhlamba na ?
You are not yet dressed,	Akukanxibi.
What were you saying about the children ?	Ubusithini na ngabantwana ?
I asked if all your children are well,	Ndibuze ukuba bonke abantwa- na bakho baphilile na.
I asked if they were already awake,	Ndibuze ukuba sebevukile na.
You said they were not yet awake,	Uthe bebengekavuki.
You said they were still sleeping,	Uthe bebesalele.
I say we shall certainly hear them when they awake,	Ndithi ngokwenene siya kube- va bakuvuka or xa bavukayo.
A child is always in good spirits in the morning if he is well ; and if he has slept sufficiently,	Umntwana uhlala onwabile onke amaxesha kusasa ukuba uphilile ; nokuba ulele ngokwaneleyo.
If he is not well, there is much grumbling,	Ukuba akaphilile ; kukho uku- krokra kakhulu
There ! one is awake now, Do you hear him ?	Nanko ! omnye uvukile ngoku. Uyamva na ?
There will soon be a pleasant hubbub,	Kamsinyane kuya kubakho intsholo emnandi.

No. 17.

## School. In School.

## Isikolo. Esikolweni.

It is time to go to school,  
Take your books and go  
quickly. You will be late,

Lixesha lokuya esikolweni.  
Thabatha iincwadi zakho uha-  
mbe kamsinyane. Uya kufika  
mva ; *or* uya kuba semva kwe-  
xesha.

The other boys have gone,

Amanye amakhwenkwe ahambi-  
le *or* emkile.

hear the bell,

Ndiyayiva intsimbi.

Your teacher will punish you if  
you don't say your lessons,

Ititshala yakho iya kukohlwaya  
ukuba akuzazi izifundo zakho.

Answer to your names,

Phendulani kumagama enu.

Look at your book,

Khangela incwadi yakho.

Stand all up,

Yimani nonke.

Bring your slate here,

Zisa isileti sakho apha.

Bring your copy book here,

Zisa ikopi yakho apha.

Begin and write on this line,

Qala ubhale kulo mgca.

That is not right,

Oko akulungile *or* akulunganga.

Try to write without blots,

Linga ukubhala ngaphandle kwa-  
machaphaza.

Hold your book higher,

Phakamisa incwadi yakho.

Have you written that page ?

Ulibhalile na elo phepha ?

Look at me,

Khangela kum ; *or* ndikhangele.

Begin and read at page twenty ;

Qala ukufunda kwiphepha la-  
mashumi amabini ; kwiphepha  
leshumi.

at page ten,

You read too fast,

Uyakhawuleza kakhulu ukufu-  
nda.

You read very well,

Ufunda kakuhle kanye.

You read very slowly,

Ufunda ngokucotha kanye.

You read very badly,

Ufunda kakubi kanye.

Where did we stop ?

Besiphelephi na ?



No. 18.

(Continued).

**In School.**

**Esikolweni.**

We stopped at page twenty-two,	Besiphele kwiphepha lamashumi mabini anambini.
We stopped at chapter twelve,	Besiphele kwisahluko seshumi elinesibini.
Let us begin here.	Masiqale apha.
What book do you want ?	Yiyiphi na incwadi oyifunayo ? <i>or</i> ufuna ncwadini na ?
We shall take a short lesson in this book,	Siya kuthabatha isifundo esifutshane kule ncwadi.
Have you done that sum ?	Usenzile na esiya sibalo ?
Now spell these words,	Ngoku pela la magama.
Where are your sums ?	Ziphi na izibalo zakho ?
Show me your work,	Ndibonise umsebenzi wakho.
The first two are wrong,	Ezimbini zokuqala azilungile.
The others are right,	Ezinye zilungile.
You have made two mistakes,	Uphosise kabini <i>or</i> wenze iziphoso ezibini.
Do that all over again,	Yenza oko konke kanjako.
Now you can go home,	Ngoku ungagoduka.
Hold up your head,	Phakamisa intloko yakho.
That is right,	Oku kulungile
Take this little boy with you to his mother,	Thabatha le nkwenkwana uyise kunina.
That little girl is his sister ; take her also,	Laa ntombazana incinane ngudade wayo ; nayo yithabathe.
Go soon, it is going to rain,	Hamba kamsinya, iza kuna.
Always do what your mother tells you, and you will be happy,	Yenza oko ukuxelelwa ngunyoko onke amaxesha, uya konwaba.

## No. 19.

Sickness.	Isifo.
A cough,	Ukhohlokhohlo.
A cold (any common illness),	Umkhuhlane.
How are you now ?	Unjani ; <i>or</i> unjani na ngo'ku ?
How do you feel to-day ?	Uva njani namhlanje ?
I am still sick,	Ndisafa.
I am better,	Ndibhetele.
I am worse,	Nding' okunye ; <i>or</i> ndifa ngokunye.
I think you are better to-day,	Ndicinga ukuba ubhetele namhla nje.
I am not worse nor better,	Andinjani.
You have a cough,	Unokhohlokhohlo ; <i>or</i> uyakhohlala.
Where is the sore place ?	Iphi na le ndawo ibuhlungu ?
Where is the pain ?	Ubuhlungu buphi na ? <i>or</i> ihlaba liphi na ?
Did you take your medicine ?	Ukhe walithabatha na iyeza lakho ?
What is the matter with John ?	UJohn unandawo ni ?
He has a cold,	Unengqele ; <i>or</i> unomkhuhlane.
A cough is not dangerous,	Ukhohlokhohlo alunangozi.
With an old man it is dangerous,	Kwindoda endala lunengozi ; <i>or</i> kwixhego lunengozi.
With an infant it is dangerous,	Kusana lunengozi.
I saw the child this evening,	Ndimbonile umntwana ngokuhlwanje.
Did he look very ill ?	Ngathi uyafa kakhulu na ?
Yes, he is very ill,	Ewe, uyafa kakhulu.
I fear he may die,	Ndiyoyika angafa ; <i>or</i> ndiyoyika angaqhawuka.
It is necessary that they be very careful,	Kufuneka ukuba babenenyameko enkulu.

o. 20.

**Cattle. About Cattle.**

**Iinkomo. Ngeenkomo.**

Cattle generally : <i>or</i> four-footed stock,	Iinkomo : impahla.
An ox,	Inkabi.
A cow,	Imazi yenkomo.
A calf,	Ithole.
A bull,	Inkunzi yenkomo.
Collect the cattle ; the sun is going down,	Hlanganisa iinkomo ; ilanga liyatshona.
Bring the cattle home,	Godusa iinkomo.
Are the cattle in the kraal ?	Iinkomo zisebuhlanti na ?
Are all the cattle there ?	Zikho zonke na iinkomo ? <i>or</i> zilapho na zonke iinkomo ?
No, there are two missing,	Hayi, kukho ( <i>or</i> zikho) ezimbini ezingekhoyo.
Two are lost,	Zimbini ezilahlekileyo ; <i>or</i> zimbini ezingekhoyo.
One is lost,	Inye elahlekileyo ; <i>or</i> inye engekho.
You must go and seek for it,	Uze uye kuyifuna.
I was seeking for it two hours,	Bendifuna yona iiyure ezimbini.
Where ?	Phi na <i>or</i> phi ?
By the river,	Ngasemlanjeni.
On the mountain and in the bush,	Entabeni nasehlathini ; <i>or</i> eludadeni.
Behind the hill,	Emva kwenduli.
You must seek again,	Uze ufune kwakhona ; <i>or</i> kanjako.
Are the sheep all there ?	Iigusha zikho zonke na
No. Three are missing,	Hayi. Ezintathu azikho.
When did you see them last ?	Uzibone nini na okokugqibela ?

At mid-day,	Emini enkulu.
Did you seek for them ?	Ukhe wazifuna na ?
Yes, a long time,	Ewe, ixesha elide.
Why did you not tell me when you came home ?	Kungani na ukuba ungandixe leli wakufika ekhaya ?
I was afraid,	Ndoyikile ; <i>or</i> bendisoyika.

## No. 21.

## About Milking Cows.

## Ngokusenga iinkomo.

Milk the cows,	Senga iimazi zeenkomo ; <i>or</i> se- nga iinkomo.
Bring the cows and milk them,	Ngenisa iimazi zeenkomo uzise- nge.
That cow gives little milk,	Laa mazi inika ubisi oluncinane
You are a good milker,	Ungumsengi onesikhono.
You are not a good milker,	Akunguye msengi unesikhono
That young calf is sick,	Laa nkonyana iyafa.
That brown cow does not stand well,	Laa maz' intsundukazi ayimi kakuhle.
She kicks when the milker ties her up.	Iyakhaba xa umsengi ayibo- phayo.
Do you notice the milker makes a slight whistling noise, when he begins milking ?	Uyaphawula na ukuba umsengi wenza ikhwelwana, xa aqalayo ukusenga ?
Churn this cream and make butter,	Phehla olu cambu, wenze ibhoto- lo ; <i>or</i> wenze amafutha ephe- hla.
You have a great many cattle,	Uneenkomo ezininzi.
How many have you ?	Zingaphi na onazo ?
I have thirty,	Ndinamashumi mathathu.

No. 22.

About asking the Way.

Ngokubuza indlela.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Is this the road to Grahams-town ?  | Yindlela eya eRini yini le ?  |
| Yes, Sir, this is the right road, Is this the right road to King William's Town ?   | Ewe, Nkosi, le yiyona ndlela. Yiyona ndlela iya eQonce le ?   |
| I want to go to Fort Beaufort, Is this the right road ?   | Ndifuna ukuya eBhofolo. Yiyona ndlela le ?  |
| I want to go to Burnshill Mission Station. Does this road go there ?  | Ndifuna ukuya esikolweni e-Mkhubiso. Le ndlela iya khona na ?   |
| No, Sir, you are mistaken. You must go back and take the first road to the right, You must take (go on) the first road to the left, | Hayi, Nkosi, ulahlekile. Buya umva uthabathe indlela yokuqala ngasekunene. Uze uhambe ngendlela yokuqala ngasekhohlo. |
| Would you show me the way to the Mission Station of Mr. S. ?  | Khawundibonise indlela eya esikolweni sikaMr. S. ?  |
| Yes, I will show you.   | Ewe. Ndiya kukubonisa.  |
| Go on this road till you come to a small house, then turn to the left.  | Hamba ngale ndlela ude ufike endlwini encinane, uze ujikele ngasekhohlo.  |

No. 23.

The Church.

Ityalike.

About going to Church.

Ngokuya Etyalikeni.

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Were you at church to-day ?         | Ubusetyalikeni na namhlanje ?       |
| Was he at church to-day ?           | Ubesetyalikeni na namhlanje ?       |
| We ought to go to church on Sunday, | Sifanele ukuya etyalikeni nge-Cawa. |
| Who was preaching ?                 | Ngubani obeshumayela ?              |

Who was the preacher ?	Ngubani obengumshumayeli ?
Were there many people in the church ?	Bebebaninzi na abantu etyalikeni ?
Yes. The church was quite full,	Ewe. Ityalike ibizele kanye.
No ; there were very few people,	Hayi ; bebembalwa kakhulu abantu.
It was raining in the morning,	Ibisina (imvula) kusasa.
Was it a good sermon ?	Ibiyintshumayelo emnandi na ?
Yes ; it was a very good sermon,	Ewe ; ibiyintshumayelo emnandi kakhulu.
No ; it was not a good sermon,	Hayi ; ibingasiyiyo ntshumayelo imnandi.
I think you often say that,	Ndicinga ukuba uyithetha futhi loo nto.
Perhaps you are difficult to please,	Mhlawumbi kunqabile ukukhoholisa.
It may be so,	Kungaba njalo.
Sometimes the hearers are to blame,	Ngamanye amaxesha abaphulaphuli banetyala.
Perhaps it was my fault,	Mhlawumbi ibilityala lam.
No ! it may have been the fault of the preacher,	Hayi ! ngaba ibilityala lomshumayeli.
Many people think it is very easy to preach,	Abantu abaninzi bacinga ukuba kulula kakhulu ukushumayela
It is not easy to preach well,	Akulula ukushumayela kakuhle.
Do you remember the text ?	Uyayikhumbula na itekisi yentshumayelo ?
Yes ; I remember it,	Ewe ; ndiyayikhumbula.
No ; I am sorry to say I have forgotten it,	Hayi ; ndiluzisi ukuthi ndiyilibele.
I am afraid that you were not listening very attentively,	Ndiyoyika ukuba ubungaphulaphuli ngenyameko.

No. 24.

(Continued).

<b>About going to Church.</b>	<b>Ngokuya Etyalikeni.</b>
A meeting of church members,	Intlanganiso yamalungu erame- nte.
The sacrament of the Lord's Supper.	Umthendeleko weNkosi.
The sacrament of Baptism,	Isakramente yoBhaptizo.
A meeting of the church mem- bers will be held next week, on Tuesday, in the evening,	Intlanganiso yamalungu erame- nte iya kubakho kwiveki ezayo ngoLwesibini ngokuhlwa.
The sacrament of the Lords' Supper will be dispensed on the 10th of next month,	Umthendeleko weNkosi uya kubakho ngosuku lweshumi kwinyanga ezayo.
There will be baptism on the first Sunday of next month,	Kuya kubakho ubhaptizo kwi- Cawa yokuqala yenyanga ezayo.
Sunday School,	Isikolo seCawa.
Day School.	Isikolo.
The Sunday School is held at three in the afternoon,	Isikolo seCawa sibakho ngeyure yesithathu ukujika kwelanga.
The Day School goes in at nine in the morning,	Isikolo singena ngeyure yetho- ba kusasa.
Out-door service,	Inkonzo yaphandle.
There will be out-door service next Sunday in the afternoon, under the trees at the river,	Kuya kubakho inkonzo yapha- ndle kwiCawa ezayo ukujika kwelanga, phantsi kwemithi emlanjeni.
A meeting of ministers, <i>i.e.</i> , preachers,	Intlanganiso yabafundisi or ya- bashumayeli.
A meeting of the elders and deacons,	Intlanganiso yabadala nabadi- koni.

A quarterly meeting, <i>i.e.</i> , a meeting of three months,	Intlanganiso kanyanga-ntathu <i>or</i> intlanganiso yekwata.
A quarterly meeting will be held on the 10th of June, in the afternoon,	Intlanganiso yeenyanga ezintathu iya kubakho ngomhla weshumi kuCanzibe emva kwe-mini.
Intimations were given about these by the ministers,	Izaziso zavakaliswa ngezi ndawo ngabafundisi ( <i>or</i> ngabashumayeli).

## No. 25.

## To Ask about Relations.      Ukubuza ngezihlobo.

Have you come from home ?	Uvela ekhaya na ?
Where do you live ?	Uhlalaphi na ?
I live at Burnshill,	Ndihlala eMkhubiso.
Is your mother well ?	Unyoko usaphila na <i>or</i> usaphilile na ?
Is your father still alive ?	Usahleli na uyihlo ?
No ; he is dead,	Hayi ; ubhubhile.
How is your wife ?	Unjani na umfazi wakho ; <i>or</i> umkakho ?
She is well,	Usaphilile.
How is your (elder) brother ?	Unjani na umkhuluwa wakho ?
How is your sister ?	Unjani na udade wenu ?
How are you children ?	Banjani na abantwana bakho ?
My father is well,	Ubawo usaphilile.
My mother is not well,	Uma akaphilile.
How long has she been ill ?	Selenexesha elinganani na esifa ?
Three days,	Iintsuku ezintathu.
Two weeks,	Iiveki ezimbini.
Is she getting better ?	Uyachacha na ?
No ; she is still very ill,	Hayi ; usafa kakhulu.



I fear she will die,	Ndiyoyika uya kubhubha.
The baby is also sick,	Usana nalo luyafa.
I want to hear news from your village,	Ndifuna ukuva iindaba ezivela emzini wakowenu.
Stay with us to-night,	Hlala nathi obu busuku ; <i>or</i> hlala nathi ngokuhlwanje.

No. 26.

Medicine.

Iyeza.

Did you take your medicine ?	Ukhe walithabatha na iyeza lakho ?
When did you take it ?	Ulithabathe nini na ?
At 10 o'clock last night,	Ngeyure yeshumi phezolo.
At 8 o'clock this morning,	Ngeyure yesibozo kule ntsasa.
I did not take the medicine,	Andilithabathanga iyeza.
What is the reason why you did not take it ?	Kungani na ukuba ungalitha- bathi ?
I was asleep,	Bendilele.
I have no reason,	Andinasizathu.
Are you sleepy now ?	Uyozela na ngoku ?
Do you wish your breakfast now ?	Ufuna iblekfesi yakho na ngoku ?
You have fever,	Unecesine.
You must (it is necessary that you) take milk and soup,	Kufuneka uthabathe ubisi no- mhluzi.
You cannot take hard or dry food,	Akunakuthabatha kutya ko- mileyo.
I have come to ask for medicine,	Ndize ( <i>or</i> bendize) kucela iyeza.
Many people are sick now,	Abantu abaninzi bayafa ngoku.
Many people were here yester- day asking for medicine,	Abantu abaninzi bebelapha izolo becela iyeza.

No. 27.

## About the Days of the Week.

Ngeentsuku zeveki.

A Day,	Usuku.
A week,	Iveki, <i>i.e. week</i> , (Dutch).
A month,	Inyanga <i>i.e. moon</i>
Have the Native people names for the days of the week ?	Abantu abaNtsundu, banamagama centsuku zeveki na ?
Yes, they have names,	Ewe, banamagama.
The name of Sunday is i-Cawa, sometimes i-Sabata,	Igama le <i>Sunday</i> yiCawa ngamanye amaxesha yiSabatha.
What is the meaning of that name ?	Lithetha ntoni na elo gama ?
I do not know the reason why it is so called, but that is the word which is used,	Andisazi isizathu sokuba libizwe njalo, kodwa lilo elo igama elisetyenziswayo.
What is the word for Monday ?	Liyintoni na ilizwi elithi <i>Monday</i> ?
For Monday we say ngu-Mvulo,	Ngo <i>Monday</i> sithi ngoMvulo.
It means the opening or beginning of the week,	Lithetha ukuvulwa nokuba ukugaleka kweveki.
You will begin work on Monday,	Uya kuqala ukusebenza ngoMvulo.
Tuesday,	OLwesibini.
It means the second day of the week,	Luthetha imini yesibini evekini.
He will come on Tuesday,	Uya kufika ngoLwesibini.
Wednesday,	OLwesithathu.
It means the third day of the week,	Luthetha usuku lwesithathu evekini.
Thursday,	OLwesine.
It means on the fourth day of the week,	Luthetha ngosuku lwesine evekini.

Friday,	OLwesihlanu.
It means on the fifth day of the week,	Luthetha ngosuku lwesihlanu evekini.
He went home on Friday,	Ugoduke ngoLwesihlanu.
Saturday,	UMgqibelo.
It means the end or close of the week,	Luthetha ngesiphelo seveki.
He died on Saturday,	Ubhubhe ngoMgqibelo.
These names are easy to remember,	La magama kulula ukuwakhumbula.
Sunday stands by itself,	ICawa imi ngokwayo.
Monday is the opening, and Saturday is the closing day of the week,	UMvule lusuku lokuvula, noMgqibelo lusuku lokuvalwa kweveki.
Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday are taken by their numbers,	OLwesibini, oLwesithathu, oLwesine noLwesihlanu zithatyathwa ngamanani azo.

No. 28.

About Work in the Fields. Ngomsebenzi emasimini.

To plough,	Ukulima.
A plough,	Ipuluwa.
Tell that man to take his plough and go to another field,	Xelela laa ndoda ithabathe ipuluwa yayo iye kwenye intsimi.
Say to that man to take (or convey) his plough to another field,	Yitsho kulaa ndoda iyise ipuluwa yayo kwenye intsimi.
There Tom will show him where to draw (make) a water-furrow,	Ke apho uTom uya kumbonisa apho aya kuwumba khona umjelo.
He will also show him where to draw straight lines for ploughing.	Kananjalo uya kumbonisa apho aya kwenza imigca ethe tse yokulima.

Have you spades in the field ?	Ninemihlakulo na entsimini ?
Yes, we have them, but mine is broken,	Ewe, sinayo, kodwa owam waphukile.
Here is another ; take it and go with it,	Nangu omnye ; wuthabathe uhambe nawo.
Don't break it,	Mus'uquwaphula ; or ungawaphuli.
Work with it and keep it for yourself,	Sebenza ngawo, uzigcinele wona.
That man has stopped working,	Laa mntu uyekile ukusebenza
How long did he work ?	Usebenze ixesha elingakanani na
I have not yet asked him,	Andikambuzi.
I did not ask him,	Andimbuzanga.
I did not speak to him,	Andithethanga naye.
Don't forget to speak to him,	Ungalibali ukuthetha naye.
He will come in the evening,	Uya kufika ngokuhlwa.
He is here now,	Ulapha ngoku.
When did you begin to work ?	Uqale nini na ukusebenza ?
I began at seven o'clock,	Ndiqale ngeyure yesixhenxe.
When did you leave off ?	Uyeke nini na ?
I left off at four o'clock,	Ndiyeke ngeyure yesine.
Why ?	Ngani ?
I was called to bring home the oxen ?	Ndibizelwe ukugodusa iinkabi.
Who called you ?	Ubizwa ngubani na ?
I was called by my master's son,	Ndibizwe ngunyana wenkosi yam.
To-morrow morning you will begin at six o'clock,	Ngomso kusasa uya kuqala ngeyure yesithandathu.
Plough in the field over the river,	Lima entsimiri phesheya komlambo.

No. 29.

About Speaking Xhosa. Ngokuthetha isiXhosa.

Can you speak Xhosa ?	Unakho na ukuthetha isiXhosa ?
No, I am sorry I cannot,	Hayi, ndiluzisi ukuthi andinakho.
Do you know how to speak Xhosa ?	Uyakwazi na ukuthetha isiXhosa ?
Yes, I can speak that language,	Ewe, ndinakho ukuthetha loo ntetho.
It is said you speak Xhosa well,	Kuthiwa usithetha kakuhle isiXhosa.
I want you to teach me,	Ndifuna ukuba undifundise.
I will be glad to do so ; or to do that,	Ndovuya ukwenje njalo ; or ukwenza oko.
It is not easy to speak Xhosa,	Akulula ukuthetha isiXhosa.
That is true, but with patience you may learn,	Oko kuyinyaniso, kanti ngenyameko ungafunda.
A language is learned by speaking and reading and writing,	Intetho ifundwa ngokuthetha nangokulesa nangokubhala.
The easiest way to learn, a language is to speak it often,	Eyona ndlela ilula ukufunda intetho kukuyithetha futhi.
Speak on anything, <i>lit.</i> , it may be what,	Thetha into yonke nokuba yinto ni na.
Say something in Xhosa before you go,	Thetha into ngesiXhosa phambi kokuba umke.
Yes, I shall do so,	Ewe, ndiya kwenje njalo.
There is a man at the door outside,	Kukho indoda emnyango ngaphandle.
He wants you to give him some money and food,	Ifuna ukuba uyiphe imali nokutya.
Now I don't know what you are saying.	Ngoku andazi ukuba uthini na.
What are you speaking about ?	Uthetha ngantoni na ?

Is it long since you began to learn Xhosa ?	Lixesha elide na waqalayo ukufunda isiXhosa ?
I don't hear you speaking Xhosa now to the children,	Andisakuva ngoku uthetha isiXhosa kubantwana.
Let us speak as much as we can in Xhosa,	Masithethe ngesiXhosa ngangoko sinakho.
If anything new occurs to you say it,	Ukuba kukho nto intsha ethe yafika kuwe yithethe.

i  
No. 30.

### About Colours.

### Ngamabala.

Black,	Mnyama.
A black ox,	Inkabi emnyama.
The black ox is sick,	Inkabi emnyama iyafa.
A dark or black man,	Umntu omnyama.
Native generally,	Abantu abaNtsundu ; <i>contr.</i> abaNtsundu.
I met a wagon with a span of black oxen, with a Native driver, and a Native leader,	Ndihlangene nenqwelo nesipani seenkabi ezimnyama, nombhexeshi oNtsundu, nomkhokeli oNtsundu.
White,	Mhlophe.
A white man,	Umntu oMhlophe ; <i>or</i> umLungu.
White people,	Abantu abaNhlophe ; <i>or</i> abeLungu.
White people came into this country long ago,	Abantu abaNhlophe bafika kudala kweli lizwe.
A white horse and a white man,	Ihashe elimhlophe nomntu omhlophe.
The white horse gallops fast ( <i>i.e.</i> , with speed),	Ihashe elimhlophe liphala ngamendu
Brown, <i>i.e.</i> , dark brown, between brown and black,	Mfusa.

No. 31.

About Colours.

Ngamabala.

*(Continued).*

Red or brown,	Bomvu ; gwangqa.
A brown cow,	Imazi egwangqakazi.
A chestnut horse,	Ihashe elifosi
A black or dark brown horse,	Ihashe elimfusa.
I met a lad with a brown horse at the river,	Ndihlangene nomfana enchashe eligwangqa emlanjeni.
Green,	Luhlaza.
The grass is green now after rain,	Ingca iluhlaza ngoku emva kwemvula.
For " blue " the same word is used,	Nge " blowu " kusetyenziswa kwa elo gama (luhlaza).
Yellow (pale),	Lubhelu or mthubi.
This flower is yellow and that one is red,	Le ntyantyambo ilubhelu, leya ibomvu.
A red blanket and a red handkerchief,	Umbhalo obomvu neqhiya ebomvu.
The man with the red blanket is very tall,	Laa mfo unombhalo or ingcawa ebomvu mde kakhulu.
That woman in the red blanket with the child is very ill,	Laa mfazi unengubo ebomvu, unomntwana, uyafa kakhulu.
The rainbow has many colours,	Umanyama unamabala amaninzi.
The sky is blue,	Izulu liluhlaza.
The sky is black,	Izulu limnyama.
The sea is blue.	Ulwandle luluhlaza.
After rain the grass is green ; it is pleasant to the eyes,	Emveni kwemvula ingca iluhlaza ; intle emehlweni.

## No. 32.

## Spring—Summer.

## Intlokohlaza—Ihlobo.

Spring,	Intlokohlaza.
In spring,	Entlokohlaza.
It is spring now,	Kusentlokohlaza ngoku.
The birds begin to build their nests,	Iintaka ziyaqala ukwakha izindlu zazo.
In spring the birds are singing and the flowers are springing,	Entlokohlaza iintaka ziyavuma neentyantyambo ziyahluma.
In spring people begin to plough,	Entlokohlaza abantu bayaqala ukulima.
They sow maize and kafir-corn and other things,	Bayahlwayela umbona nama-zimba nezinye izinto.
Summer,	Ihlobo.
In summer,	Ehlotyeni.
It is summer now,	Kusehlotyeni ngoku.
In summer the bees are humming and the grass is growing,	Ehlotyeni iinyosi ziyaduma nengca iyahluma.
In summer the bees gather honey,	Ehlotyeni iinyosi zihlangula ubusi.
In summer the days are hot and long.	Ehlotyeni iimini zishushu zinde.

## No. 33.

## Autumn and Winter.

## Ukwindla nobusika.

Autumn,	Ukwindla.
In autumn,	Ekwindla.
In autumn the leaves fall from the trees.	Ekwindla amagqabi ayawa emithini.
In autumn people reap their fields,	Ekwindla abantu bavuna amasimi.



Winter,	Ubusika.
In winter,	Ebusika.
It is winter now,	Kusebusika ngoku.
In winter the grass is withered,	Ebusika ingca iyabuna.
In winter the days are short,	Ebusika iimini zimfutshane.
In winter the nights are long and the mornings cold,	Ebusika bude ubusuku, kuya banda kusasa.

No. 34.

About the Question—How many ?      Ngombuzo—Ngaphi na ?

In English we can say " How many " before all kinds of words called nouns, (NgesiNgesi) singathi *how many*, Ngaphambi kweentlobo zonke zamazwi ekuthiwa zizibizo.

But in Xhosa the word for "how many " changes according to the class of noun, Kodwa ngesiXhosa ilizwi elithi *how many* liguqulwa nje ngeklasi yesibizo.

That is to say, some letters called prefixes are changed, Oko kukuthi, amanye amagama ekuthiwa zi*prefix* ayaguqulwa.

1st Class.

How many people ?	Bangaphi na abantu ?
How many children ?	Bangaphi na abantwana ?
How many women ?	Bangaphi na abafazi ?
How many children are in school ?	Bangaphi abantwana esikolweni ?

2nd Class.

How many words are written ?	Mangaphi na amazwi abhaliweyo,
How many horses are to be sold ?	Mangaphi na amahashe aya kuthengiswa ?
How many stones are brought here ?	Mangaphi na amatye azisiweyo apha ?

*3rd Class.*

- How many sheep are stolen ? Zingaphi na iigusha ezibiweyo ?  
 How many houses are burnt ? Zingaphi na izindlu ezitshileyo ?  
 How many dogs are running ? Zingaphi na izinia ezibalekayo ?

*4th Class.*

- How many servants are here ? Zingaphi na izicaka ezilapha ?

*5th Class.*

- How many infants are here ? Zingaphi na iintsana ezilapha ?

*6th Class.*

- How many baskets are made ? Mingaphi na iminyazi eyenziweyo ?

## No. 35.

About the Question—Where ? Ngombuzo—Phi na ?  
 and the words Apho, Akhona. namazwi Apho—Khona.

- Where ? *Indef. interrogative,* Phi na *contracted to* phi ?  
 Where are you going ? Uyaphi na ? *or* uyaphi ?  
 Where do you come from ? Uvelaphi na ? *or* uvelaphi ?  
 Where has he gone ? Uyephi na ? *or* umkelephi na ?  
 Where do they come from ? Bavelaphi na ?  
 Where are you ? Uphi na ?  
 Where is he ? U'phi na ?  
 He is here in the house, Ulapha endlwini.  
 Where is your father ? Uphi na uyihlo ?  
 Where is he that hurt the child ? Uphi na lowo owenzakalise umntwana ?  
 Where ? *meaning place in which referred to,* Apho *followed by* khona ?  
 Where have you put my hat ? Uwubeke phi na umnqwazi wam ?  
 Is it where you put it, Ulapho wawubeka khona ; *or* ulapho uwubeka khona.

No. 36.

**About the Question—Where? With different Classes of Nouns.**

*The interrogative PHINA varies with the Class of Nouns—  
i.e., the prefix varies.*

*1st Class.*

Where is that man? Uphi na loo mntu?  
Where are those people? Baphi na abo bantu?

*2nd Class.*

Where is that horse? Liphi na elo hashe?  
Where are those horses? Aphi na loo mahashe?

*3rd Class.*

Where is that thing? Iphi na loo nto?  
Where are those things? Ziphi na ezo zinto?

*4th Class.*

Where is that servant? Siphi na eso sicaka?  
Where are those servants? Ziphi na ezo zicaka?

*5th Class.*

Where is your infant? Luphi na usana lwakho?  
Where are those infants? Ziphi na ezo ntsana?

*6th Class.*

Where is the river? Uphi na umlambo?  
Where are the rivers? Iphi na imilambo?

*7th Class.*

Where is the pain in your  
body? Buphi na ubuhlungu emziinbeni  
wakho?  
Where is the beauty of this  
thing? Buphi na ubuhle bale nto?

*8th Class.*

Where is the food which is  
cooked? Kuphi na ukutya okuphekiwe-  
yo?  
Where is your boasting now? Kuphi na ngoku ukuqhayisa  
kwakho?

No. 37.

About the Question—What ? Ngombuzo—Ntoni na ?

*What ? is expressed in various ways.*

What ? ( <i>various forms are used, often the short form ni ?</i> )	Yintoni na ; <i>or</i> ntoni na ; <i>or</i> ntoni ; <i>or</i> ni na ; <i>or</i> ni ; <i>or</i> ngantoni na ?
What do you say ?	Uthini ?
What do you say ?	Uthini wena ?
What does he say <i>or</i> mean ?	Uthetha ntoni ; <i>usually</i> uthini ?
When shall I say <i>or</i> do ?	Ndiya kuthini na ?
What did he say ?	Utheni na ?
What do you think ?	Ucinga ntoni na ?
What are you crying for ?	Ulilela ntoni na ?
What have you lost ?	Ulahlekwe yintoni na ?
What are you seeking for ? <i>or</i> what do you want ?	Ufuna ntoni na ?
What is to be done ?	Makwenziwe ntoni na ?
What shall I do ?	Ndiya kwenza ntoni na ? <i>or</i> ndiya kuthini na ?
What shall we do ?	Siya kwenza ntoni na ?
What ought we to do ?	Sifanele ukwenza ntoni na ?
What ought we to do when we want money ?	Sifanele ukwenza ntoni na xa sifuna inali ?
We ought to work,	Sifanele ukusebenza.
What have you done ?	Wenza ntoni na ?
What did you see on the road ?	Ubone ntoni na endloleni ?
What will you give me ?	Uya kundinika ntoni na ?
What do you like <i>or</i> wish ?	Uthanda ntoni na ?
What have you beside your horse ?	Yintoni na onayo ngaphandle kwehashe lakho ?
What is this made of ?	Yenziwe ngantoni na le nto ?
What is this book made of ?	Yenziwe ngantoni na le ncwadi ?
What was I saying ?	Bendisithini na mna ?

I do not know what (*i.e.*, the thing which) you are saying, Andiyazi into oyithethayo.  
 What are these people doing? Benza ntoni na aba bantu?  
 What is that man doing? Yenza ntoni na laa ndoda?

No. 38.

About the Question—What? Ngombuzo—Ntoni na?

*As a general interrogative its prefix varies with the class of nouns.  
 But questions may be asked without the prefix.*

1st Class.

What is a carpenter? Uyintoni na umchweli?  
 What are carpenters? Bayintoni na abachweli?

2nd Class.

What is debt? Liyintoni na ityala?  
 What are debts? Ayintoni na amatyala?

3rd Class.

What is a house? Iyintoni na indlu?  
 What are houses? Ziyintoni na izindlu?

4th Class.

What is a servant? Siyintoni na isicaka?  
 What are servants? Ziyintoni na izicaka?

5th Class.

What is a stick or rod? Iyintoni na intonga?  
 What are sticks or rods? Ziyintoni na iintonga?

6th Class.

What is a river? Uyintoni na umlambo?  
 What are rivers? Iyintoni na imilambo?

7th Class.

What is wisdom? Buyintoni na ubulumko?

8th Class.

What is food? Kuyintoni na ukutya?

No. 39.

About the Words—Who, Whom, Which. Ngamazwi—Who, Whom, and Which, NgesiNgesi.

Who, Whom, Which *are expressed by the Xhosa relative O, A, E.*

*1st Class.*

The man who is working,	Umntu osebenzayo.
The people who are working,	Abantu abasebenzayo.
The man whom I see,	Umntu endimbonayo.

*2nd Class.*

The horse which was running,	Ihashe ebe libaleka.
The horse which did not run,	Ihashe ebe lingabaleki.
The horses which were stolen,	Amahashe abebiwe.

*3rd Class.*

The house which was burnt,	Indlu ebitshisiwe.
The house which was not burnt,	Indlu ebingatshiswanga.
The houses which fell,	Izindlu eziwileyo.

*4th Class.*

The servant, who is working,	Isicaka esisebenzayo.
The servants whom I saw,	Izicaka endizibonileyo.
The servants who ran away,	Izicaka ezimkileyo.

*5th Class.*

Weeds which are growing,	Ukhula olukhulayo.
News which I do not believe,	Iindaba endingazikholelwayo

*6th Class.*

The command which I obeyed,	Umyalelo endiwuvileyo.
The rivers which we crossed,	Imilambo esiyiwelileyo.

*7th Class.*

Wisdom which I have not got,	Ubulumko endingenabo.
Folly which troubles me,	Ubudenge obundikhathazayo.

*8th Class.*

Food which I cook,	Ukutya endikuphekayo.
Strife which distracts me,	Ukulwa okundihilizisayo.

No. 40.

About the Question—When? Ngombuzo—Nini na ?

*When is expressed in various ways.*

When ? ( <i>time definite</i> ),	Nini na or nini ?
When did you come here ?	Uze nini na apha ?
I arrived at seven o'clock,	Ndifike ngeyure yesixhenxe.
When he arrives I will speak to him,	Xa afikileyo ndothetha naye.
When will the horses arrive ?	Amahashe aya kufika nini na ?
When will the wagons come ?	Iinqwelo ziya kufika nini na ?
When will you begin to work earnestly ?	Uya kuqala ukusebenza nini na ngokunyameka ?
When did you begin this work ?	Uwuqale nini na lo msebenzi ?
When will John return ?	Uya kubuya nini na uJohn ?
About mid-day,	Malunga emini enkulu.
When did that happen ?	Kwenzeke nini na oko ?
When shall I come here ?	Ndoza nini na apha ?
When did you get that book ?	Uyifumene nini na loo ncwadi ?
When did you buy that horse ?	Ulithenge nini na elo hashe ?
When ( <i>time indefinite</i> ),	Xa ? or xeshikweni.
When I go you will also go,	Xa ndihambayo uya kuhamba nawe.
When they were sitting in the house they heard a noise outside,	Xa babehleli endlwini beva ingxokozelo ngaphandle.
When—( <i>by tense forms of the Verb</i> ),	Ndaku ; aku ; saku ; baku, etc.
When I arrived I found the children outside the house,	Ndakufika ndabafumana abantwana ngaphandle kwendlu.
When he came to that place he saw the horses which had been stolen,	Akufika kuloo ndawo wawabona amahashe awayebiwe.

No. 41.

<b>About the Question—Why ?</b>	<b>Ngombuzo—Ngani na ?</b>
Why ?	Yini na ; <i>or</i> ngani na <i>or</i> ni na ?
Why, <i>i.e.</i> , why is it that ?	Yini na ukuba ; <i>or</i> kungani na ukuba ; <i>or</i> kutheni na ?
Why do you do that ?	Yini na ukuba ,uyenze loo nto ?
Why have you come here ?	Uze ngani na apha ?
Why are you here ?	Ukho ngani na ?
There was no reason that I know,	Bekungekho sizathu ndisaziyo.
Why do you ask ? ( <i>if a question</i> ),	Ubuzelani na ?
Why do you ask ? ( <i>if asking for a thing</i> ),	Ucelelani na ?
Why does John continue walking about by the river ?	Yini na ukuba uJohn amane ehamba-hamba ngasemlanieni ?
Why was he unwilling to work ?	Yini na ukuba angavumi ukusebenza ?
Why did he go out of the house ?	Yini na ukuba aphume endlwini.
Why have all these people come here this morning ?	Yini na ukuba abantu bonke beze apha kule ntsasa ?
Why did you beat the boy ?	Kungani na ukuba uyibethe inkwenkwe ?
Why does he (boy) run away ?	Kungani na ukuba ibaleke imke.
Why don't you go at once ?	Kungani na ukuba ungayi kwangoku ?
Why are you unwilling to say what you have besides your horse and your gun ?	Kungani na ukuba ungavumi ukuyixela into onayo engaphandle kwchashe lakho nompu ?



No. 42.

**About the Question—How, Njani na, or Nini, or Ni, with  
How is, How are; How the verb ukuthi in different tenses  
can, etc.**

How is this ; or what is this ; Kutheni or kutheni na ; or  
or what is it ? injani na le nto—*lit.*, it is  
how, this thing ?

How are you (in health) ? Unjani na ?

How are they ? Banjani na ?

How are the children ? Banjani na abantwana ?

How is your mother ? Unjani na unyoko ?

*With DO and DID.*

How do they say such things ? Bathini na ukuthetha izinto  
ezinje ?

How do you explain your Uthini na ukusichaza isimilo  
conduct or behaviour ? sakho ?

How did he explain his action ? Utheni na ukusichaza isenzo  
sakhe ?

How did he come in here—to Utheni na ukungena apha—  
this house ? kule ndlu ?

How did you come in here— Utheni na ukungena apha—  
to this garden ? kule ntsimi ?

How did John go away so Utheni na uJohn ukumka ka-  
soon ? msinya kangaka ?

How did this happen ? Itheni na ukuhla le nto ?

*With SHALL and WILL.*

How shall I go up there ? Ndiya kuthini na (or ndithi ni  
na) ukunyuka apho (or khona).

How will you pay that Uya kuthini na ukuyihlawula  
money ? loo mali ?

How shall we cross the river ? Siya kuthini na (or sothi ni na)  
ukuwela emlanjeni ?

How will he go home ? Uya kuthini na (or wothi ni na)  
ukugoduka ?

- How will you meet your friend ? Uya kuthini na ukuhlangana nomhlobo wakho ?
- How shall I get into the house ? Ndiya kuthini na (or ndothini na) ukungena endlwini ?
- How shall we get out of this hole ? Siya kuthini na (or sothini na) ukuphuma emngxunyeni ?

*With CAN.*

- How can I help you in this trouble ? Ndingathini na ukukunceda kule nkathazo ?
- How can I lift up this thing ? Ndingathini na ukuyiphakamisa le nto ?
- How can I carry that heavy burden ? Ndingathini na ukuwuthwala loo mthwalo unzima ?
- How can we see this wrong done ? Singathini na ukubona obu bubu benzekileyo ?
- How can you say such things ? Ungathini na ukuzithetha izinto ezinje ?
- How can John catch that wild horse ? Angathini na uJohn ukubamba elaa hashe lindwebileyo ?
- How can I put on such rags ? Ndingathini na ukwambatha amadlavu anje ?
- How can you say so ? Ungathini na ukutsho njalo ?
- How can he pay that money ? Angathini na ukuyihlawula loo mali ?
- How can they pay so much money ? Bangathini na ukuhlawula imali eninzi kangaka ?
- How can I do this ? Ndingathini na ukwenza oku ?

*Other forms.*

- Look at those horses how they run, Khangela amahashe athini na ukubaleka
- How is it (*lit.*, it is a thing what) that you don't understand ? Yini na le nto ukuba ungaqondi ?

No. 43.

Here, There.

Apha, Apho—khona.

Here,	Apha ; lapha.
There,	Apho ; khona ; <i>or</i> ulapho phaya
They are here,	Balapha.
Are you there ?	Ukhona ; <i>or</i> ulapho na ?
I am here,	Ndilapha.
Is he there ?	Ukhona <i>or</i> ulapho na ?
He is here,	Ulapha.
Were you there in Church ?	Ubukho na etyalikeni ?
Were you not there ?	Ubungekho na ?
Was he there in the meeting ?	Ubekhona na entlanganisweni ?
Was the missionary there ?	Ubekho na umfundisi ?
Was he not there ?	Ubengekho na ?
Was he here this morning ?	Ubelapha na kusasa nje
Are they there (referring) to	Bakho na ?
Are they there (to children) ?	Bakho na ?
Are they there (to horses) ?	Akho na ?
Are they there (to things) ?	Zikho na ?
Are they there (to baskets) ?	Zikho na ?
Are there horses ?	Akho na amahashe ?
Are the horses there ?	Akho na amahashe apho ?
Are the horses there ? ( <i>i.e.</i> , where you are) ?	Alapho na amahashe ?

No. 44.

About Work (Trade)

Ngemisebenzi..

A carpenter,	Umchweli.
He wants to be a carpenter,	Ufuna ukuba ngumchweli.
He is a good carpenter,	Ungumchweli olungileyo.
He is not a good carpenter,	Akanguye mchweli ulungileyo.
He cannot be a good carpenter ; he is not strong,	Akanakuba ngumchweli olungi- leyo ; akomelele.

A mason,	Umakhi.
This young man wishes to be a mason,	Lo mfana ufuna ukuba ngumakhi.
He says he knows how to make bricks,	Uthi uyakwazi ukwenza izitena.
A printer,	Umshicileli.
These two boys say they want to be printers,	La makhwenkwe mabini athi afuna ukuba ngabashicileli.
They can read and write well,	Anakho ukufunda nokubhala kakuhle.
A shoemaker,	Umenzi wezihlangu.
These four boys want to be shoemakers.	La makhwenkwe mane afuna ukuba ngabenzi bezihlangu.
A tailor,	Umthungi weengubo.
The two small boys want to be tailors,	Amakhwenkwe amancinane amabini afuna ukuba ngabathungi beengubo.

No. 45.

**Advertisements—Wanted.**

**Izaziso—Kufunwa.**

An advertisement,	Isaziso.
Wanted a man who can groom horses and work in the garden,	Kufunwa umntu okwaziyo ukusula amahashe nokusebenza entsimini.
Wanted a woman who can cook well, Good wages. Those wishing this place will apply to Mrs. A. B.	Kufunwa umfazi okwaziyo ukupheka kakuhle. Umvuzo mhle. Abayifunayo loo ndawo bothumela kuMrs. A.B.
Wanted a certificated teacher who has also a certificate of character. Salary £40 per annum. Apply to the Rev. Y. Z.	Kufunwa ititshala enesiqiniseko nencwadi yesimilo. Umvuzo ziiponti ezimashumi mane ngonyaka. Bhalela kuRev. Y. Z.

- Wanted a girl to work in the house as general servant. Those wishing this place will apply to Mrs. C. D. Kufunwa intombi eyoba sicakakazi somsebenzi wonke wendlu. Abayifunayo le ndawo bothumela kuMrs. C. D.
- Wanted a female Native assistant teacher for a day school, to begin work on January 21st Kufunwa ititshalakazi eNtsundu yokuncedisa kwisikolo semini, yowuqala umsebenzi ngo Januwari ngomhla wa-21.
- Wanted a driver (of horses), Kufunwa umbhexeshi (wamahashe)

No. 46.

East, West.

Impumalanga, Intshonalanga.

- The east, *or* rising of the sun. Empumalanga.  
 In the east., Empumalanga.  
 In the morning the sun is seen in the east, Kusasa ilanga liyabonwa empumalanga.  
 The sun has risen, Ilanga liphumile.  
 The west *or* setting of the sun, Entshonalanga.  
 In the evening the sun is seen in the west, Matshona ilanga liyabonwa entshonalanga.  
 The sun has set, Ilanga litshonile.  
 The people come from the east Aba bantu bavela empumalanga.  
 He has a field on the west side of the river, Unentsimi ngecala lasentshonalanga lomlambo.  
 There is dry country in the west of the Cape Colony, Kukho ilizwe elomileyo ngasentshonalanga kwale Koloni yaseKapa.  
 The sea lies to east and west and south of this country, Ulwandle lungasempumalanga nasentshonalanga nasesude yeli lizwe.

No. 47.

## North, South.

## Inode, Isude.

North and South,	Inode nesude.
The north wind is often a hot wind,	Umoya wasenode udla ngokuba ngumoya oshushu.
There are clouds in the south,	Kukho amafu esude.
The south wind sometimes brings rain,	Umoya wasesude maxesha wa- mbi uzisa imvula.
He build his house on the north side of the mountain,	Wakhe indlu yakhe ngecala lase- node lentaba.
Many people are going to the country in the north,	Abantu abaninzi baya elizweni lasenode.
The Zulu country, lies to the north-east of this country,	Iizwe lakwaZulu lingasenode ngasempumalanga yeli lizwe.

No. 48.

## Short Expressions Frequently Used.

It is so,	Kunjalo.
Is it so?	Kunjalo na?
I see it is so,	Ndibona kunjalo.
I think that is so,	Ndicinga ukuba kunjalo.
It may be so,	Kunganjalo.
I heard that it was so,	Khendeva ukuba kunjalo.
Let it be so,	Makube njalo; <i>or</i> yiyeke njalo.
It is true,	Kuyinyaniso <i>or</i> yinyaniso.
Is it true that—?	Kuyinyaniso na ukuba—?
There is no doubt,	Akukho mathandabuzo.
Without doubt,	Ngaphandle kokuthandabuza.
It is false,	Bubuxoki.
Do you believe me?	Uyakholwa na ndim?
I believe you,	Ndiyakholwa nguwe.
It is all one,	Yint' enye.

No. 49.

## Short Expressions Frequently Used.

It is possible,	Kunokwenzeka.
Is it possible ?	Kunokwenzeka na ?
Is it possible to go ? to cross the river ? to work ? to speak ? to fight ?	Kunokwenzeka na ukuya ? uku- wela umlambo ? ukusebenza ? ukuthetha ? ukulwa ?
I was jesting,	Bendincokola.
Don't be angry,	Ungaqumbi.
Do you hear ?	Uyeva na ?
I did not hear you,	Andikuvanga.
If I had heard you speaking I would have come,	Ukuba bendikuvile uthetha be- ndiya kuza <i>or</i> ngendizile.
I forgot,	Ndalibala <i>or</i> ndilibele.
Don't you see ?	Akuboni na wena ?
Wait a little <i>or</i> do it gently,	Khawume ; <i>or</i> yenza kuhle.
Let me show you what this is,	Mandikubonise into eyiyo le nto.
Be quiet,	Yithi tu ; yithi cwaka.
Leave him ; let him alone,	Myeke ; mshiye.
I am hurt,	Ndcenzakele.
Come this way,	Yiza ngapha.
Where have you come from to-day ?	Uvelaphi na namhlanje ?
I am very glad to see you,	Ndivuya kakhulu ukukubona.
I hope you have had a good journey,	Ndiyathemba ukuba uhambe kakuhle ; <i>or</i> ube nehambo entle.
You say you are still going to see John,	Uthi usaya kumbona uJohn.
Little by little,	Iintwana ngeentwana.
Price,	Inani ; ixabiso.
What does it cost ? ( <i>lit.</i> , what does it eat as money).	Idla ntoni na ; <i>or</i> idla malini na.

## No. 50.

## Short Expressions Frequently Used.

Anyone ; <i>lit.</i> , he is who,	Ubani.
If there is anyone who has a complaint let him speak now,	Ukuba kukho bani unesikhala- zo makathethe ngokunje.
Everyone ; <i>lit.</i> , all who,	Wonke ubani.
Everyone who wants work let him come to-morrow morning,	Wonke ubani ofuna umsebenzi makeze ngomso kusasa.
Something, <i>lit.</i> , a thing,	Into.
I want to tell you something,	Ndifuna ukukuxelela into.
One thing,	Into enye.
Anything, <i>lit.</i> , a thing,	Nantoni na ; into.
Different things,	Izinto ngezinto.
I did not tell him anything, yesterday,	Andimxelelanga nto izolo.
Nothing, <i>lit.</i> , not one thing,	Nento <i>or</i> nanye into.
It is nothing, <i>lit.</i> , it is not a thing,	Asiyiyo nto, akukho nto (there is nothing.)
I do not say anything,	Andithethi nto.
I said nothing, <i>lit.</i> , I do not say a thing,	Andithethanga nto.
Let us do ne thing now ; let us work with all our might,	Masenze nto nye ngoku ; ma- sisebenze ngawo onke ama- ndla ethu.
Would it not be better to do so in the morning ?	Akungelungi na ukwenje njalo kusasa ?
There is nothing settled,	Akukho nto ifeziweyo.
There is no difference,	Akukho mahluko.
They said it is all right,	Bathi kulungile kanye.
He will return another day,	Uya kubuya ngenye imini.



## No. 51.

## Short Expressions Frequently Used.

It is because,	Kungokuba.
It is not because,	Akungokuba.
It is because you have done this that I am angry,	Kungokuba wenze oku ndino- msindo nje.
It is not because you went away that I am sorry,	Akungokuba umkile ndilusizi nje.
We both,	Thina sobabini.
We both went there with him to the river,	Thina sobabini siye naye emla- njeni.
We all,	Thina sonke.
We all agreed yesterday,	Thina sonke sivumile izolo.
Who is that (as calling in the dark) ?	Ngubani na lowo ?
Who is there ?	Ngubani na olapho ?
It is I,	Ndim.
Come forward,	Sondela.
I cannot see you,	Andinakho ukukubona.
Don't be afraid,	Musa ukoyika.
Come near to me,	Sondela kum.
Stand back a little,	Buya umva kancinane.
Stay there,	Hlala apho.
Don't go so fast,	Musa ukungxama kangaka.
Get away <i>or</i> move off,	Suka, khwelela.
What for ?	Ngani ?
Because I want you to go,	Ngokuba ndifuna ukuba umke.
I am all right here,	Ndilungile apha.
What do you mean ? <i>lit.</i> , you say what ?	Uthetha nto ni na ?
I would be glad if you tell me,	Ndingavuya ukuba undixelele.
I thought you were wanting me,	Bendiba ubundifuna.

No. 52.

## Some Proverbial and other Expressions.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>Father—a term of respect or politeness to seniors and superiors—constantly used.</p> <p>Child of my father—a term of endearment,</p> <p>My child,</p> <p>My son,</p> <p>You carry tales <i>or</i> you tell lies,</p> <p>A tale-bearer causes quarrels, <i>lit.</i>, he kindles a fire and leaves it.</p> <p>Scant hospitality, <i>or</i> I have had no food to-day,</p> <p>Pretended sorrow. To weep with one eye,</p> <p>Greediness, <i>lit.</i>, that fellow has a throat,</p> <p>Deferred hope. What will never happen. The Greek Kalends,</p> <p>Lost opportunity. The dawn does not come twice to waken man.</p> | <p>Bawo, <i>i.e.</i>, my father—but uyihlo, your father; uyise, his father.</p> <p>Mntakabawo; contracted from mntwana kabawo.</p> <p>Mntwanam; for mntwana wam.</p> <p>Nyana wam.</p> <p>Unolwimi, <i>i.e.</i>, you have a tongue.</p> <p>Uphembeshiya udala ingxabano.</p> <p>Andikhange ndisule mlomo namhlanje, <i>i.e.</i>, I have not wiped my mouth today.</p> <p>Ukulila ngasonye; contracted for ngeliso elinye</p> <p>Loo mfo unomqala.</p> <p>Ukuza kukaNxele:—The coming of Nxele who never returned from banishment.</p> <p>Ukusa akufiki kabini ukuza kuvusa umntu. (West African).</p> |
|--|---|

## SOME EXPLANATORY NOTES.

There are some words and particles in Xhosa which require a little explanation, and a few of these are given in the accompanying notes.

**Lesson No. 1.—Wethu.** In the first sentence the word *wethu* occurs while *umhlobo*, for “friend,” does not appear at all in the Xhosa. *Wethu* is a possessive pronoun signifying “ours.” It is used colloquially for “friend,” as equivalent to “one of us” or “one of our,” hence for *umhlobo*.

**Nje.** In the same page there occurs the word *namhlanje*. This particle *nje* is sometimes used and sometimes not, and may therefore puzzle the reader. It is used when present time is indicated. Thus *namhla* is to-day generally; *kusasa*, the morning or in the morning; *ngokuhlwa*, evening; *ngoku*, now. But if *this* day, *this* morning, *this* evening, or *just now* were meant, the expression would be *namhlanje*; *kusasanje*; *ngokuhlwanje*; *ngokunje*.

**Sa.** In the sentence, “Are you still well?” the Xhosa equivalent is *Usaphilile na*. Here the particle *sa* is inserted into the verb before its root, though it is no part of the verb. *Sa* thus used, means *condition of action* or *state*, and is equivalent to *yet*, or *still*, *being so*, or *doing so*. Thus *ndithetha*, I speak; *ndisathetha* I am still speaking; *udla*, he is eating; *usadla*, he is still eating.

**Lesson No. 2.—Woje isonka emalahleni**, for “toast bread,” reads “roast bread on the embers or coal.”

**Tshayel' indlu**, is sweep the house, the word for “floor” not being used.

**Lesson No. 3.—Ndibuye ndikuphe na?** for, “will you take some more” is “may I again give or help you?”

**Lesson No. 4.—Khawundiphe amanzi ndisele**, please give me, etc. The present infinitive is here, as often, expressed by the present subjunctive, *ukuze* being understood, or *in order that* I may drink.

Lesson No. 10.—*Loo mall ininzi*, “that is too much,” is, that money is great or large.

Lesson No. 17.—*Enu*, possessive pronoun, second plural, with a noun of the second class. These possessive pronouns, through all their different forms are very numerous and difficult to remember without an acquaintance with the classification of nouns.

Lesson No. 33.—*Ubusika bude*, etc. In the Xhosa of this sentence there are no plural corresponding to those in the English, and it reads—long is the night, and cold is the morning.

Lesson No. 39.—*Yo*. This particle occurs frequently in that lesson and also in the previous pages. It is sometimes used and sometimes not. It is used when the verb is emphatic, with adjectives ending in *ile*, and when the relative is the nominative or the near object of the verb. It adds little or nothing of the meaning, but is used for the sake of euphony and also to distinguish between some tenses of verbs which are similar in sound but different in meaning.

*Ka* is a particle inserted into verbs before the root, signifying, *yet* ; or with negative form, *not yet* ; as *akakafiki*, he has not yet arrived.

**XHOSA VOCABULARY**

Sources of information : Dr. Kropf's Kafir-English Dictionary ;  
Davis's English-Kafir and other Vocabularies, and Native assist-  
ance.

# VOCABULARY

## A

**A** is sounded in Xhosa like *a* in father. It has also a shorter sound.

**A**, the indefinite article. No single syllable is used in Xhosa for the indefinite article. Its place is supplied by the noun prefixes, as, a person, umntu; a child, umntwana; a horse, ihashe; and so on.

**Abandon**, *v.t.* To forsake, ukulahla; ukushiya; to leave off, ukuyeka, to give up in despair, ukuncama.

**Abandoned**, *part.* Morally, khohlakele, mbi; forsaken, lahliwe; given up, yekiwe.

**Abandonment**, *n.* Ukulahlwa; ukuncanywa.

**Abase**, *v.t.* Ukudanisa; ukuthobisa.

**Abate**, *v.i.* Ukutsama; ukuncipha; *v.t.* ukunciphi-a.

**Abatement**, *n.* Ukuncitshiswa; ukudanjiswa.

**Abbreviate**, *v.t.* Ukufinyeza.

**Abscess**, *n.* Ithumba.

**Abdomen**, *n.* Isisu.

**Abhor**, *v.t.* Ukuzonda.

**Abhorrence**, *n.* Inzondo.

**Abhorrently**, *adv.* Ngokuzonda.

**Abide**, *v.i.* To dwell, ukuhlala.

They abode a long time at that place, *bahlala kade* kuloo ndawo.

He remained after the meeting, wasala emva kwentlanganiso.

**Abiding**, *a.* Hleli; miyo.

**Ability**, *n.* Amandla; ingqondo; ukwazi.

**Abjure**, *v.t.* Ukufungisa.

**Able**, *adj.*, is expressed in various ways:—

1. With personal pronoun by the addition of *nakho*, and the verb following, as:—

I am able to walk, *ndinakho* ukuhamba.

He is able to speak, *unakho* ukuthetha.

2. By the noun *amandla*, as:—He is able, *unamandla*.

3. By an adjective, *womelele*, as:—To make able or strengthen, *ukomeleza*.

**Ablution**, *n.* Ukuhlanzwa; ukuhlanjululwa.

**Ably**, *adv.* Ngamandla; ngeingqondo.

**Abode**, *n.* Indlu, house; ikhaya, home; umzi, village.

**Abolish**, *v.t.* Ukubhubhisa; ukutshabalalisa.

- Abolition, n.** Ukubhujiswa ; ukutshatyalaliswa.
- Abominable, adj.** Bi or mbi. The prefix varies with the class of the noun, as :—  
An abominable person, umntu ombi.  
An abominable word, ilizwi elibi.  
An abominable thing, into embi kanye, or into eyintshontsho.
- Abominate, v.t.** Ukuzonda.
- Abomination, n.** Intshontsho.
- Aborigines, n.** Abemi bokuqala.
- Abound, v.t.** Ukwanela.
- About, prep.,** is expressed in various ways, as :—  
1. Near to, in place, by, *ngase*, before the locative of nouns.  
About the house, *ngasendlwini*.  
About the river, *ngasemlanjeni*.  
2. In time, *nga*, *nge*, *ngo*.  
In or about the evening, *ngokuhlwa*.  
In or about the morning, *ngokusa ngentsasa*.  
About or that time, *ngelo xesha*, or *ngelo xa*.  
3. As to circumstances, concerning by *nga*, *nge*, *ngo*, prefixed in the noun, according to its initial letter, *nga* before a consonant or noun beginning with *a* ; *nge* before a noun beginning with *i* ; *ngo* before a noun beginning with *u*.  
About what, *ngantoni na* ?  
About that thing, *ngaloo nto*.  
About that matter, *ngaloo mci-mbi*.  
About that food, *ngoko kutya*.
- Above, prep.** Phezulu, or phezu ; followed by *kwa*, *kwe*, *kwi* before the noun.  
Above the stones, phezu *kwa-matye*.  
Above the trees, phezu *kwemithi*.
- Abrade, v.t.** or RUB. Ukuguzula.
- Abridge, v.t.** To shorten materially, ukufinyeza ; to diminish bulk, ukunciphisa.
- Abroad, adv.** Outside, close by, ngaphandle ; phandle.
- Abscond, v.t.** Ukuzimela ; ukugweshisa.
- Absence, n.** Ukungabikho.
- Absent, adj.,** is expressed by the negative particles of the verb before the word *kho*, a contraction of *khona*, there, as :—  
He is absent, not there, *akakho*.
- Abstain, v.t.** Ukuzila, from food ukuyeka, to leave off.
- Abundance, n.** Ubuninzi.
- Abundant, adj.** Ninzi ; onke ; with the prefix according to the class of the noun, as :—  
The grass is abundant, *ingca ininzi*.  
The water is plentiful, *amanzi maninzi*.
- Abundantly, adv.** Ngobuninzi.
- Abuse, v.t.** Ukona, maltreat ukuthuka, with words.
- Abusively, adv.** Ngokuthuka.
- Accede, v.t.** Ukuvuma.
- Accept, v.t.** Ukuvuma.
- Acceptable, a.** Kholekile ; thandekile.
- Acceptably, adv.** Ngokukholekileyo.



- Acceptance, n.** Ukubukwa.
- Access, n.** Ukungena; ukufikelela.
- Accident, n.** Ingozi.
- Accidentally, adv.** Ngengozi.
- Accompany, v.t.** Ukukhapha; ukuphelekelela.
- Accomplice, n.** Imvumelwano ngokona.
- Accomplish, v.t.** Ukufeza.
- Accomplished, a.** Fezekileyo.
- Accordingly to, prep.** Nga, nge, ngo, prefixed to following noun or adjective.
- Accost, v.t.** To call after, ukumemeza.
- Account, v.t.** To reckon, ukubala. To narrate, ukuxela.
- Account, n.** Narrative, imbali; ingxelo; isishumayelo. On account of, ngenxa. On your account, ngenxa yakho. On account of this, or because, ngenxa yoko.
- Accountant, n.** Umbali.
- Accumulate, v.t.** To pile, up, ukuhlenganisa.
- Accumulation, n.** Imfumba.
- Accuracy, n.** Ubulungisa.
- Accurate, adj.** True, nyanisile.
- Accurately, adj.** Truthfully, ngenyaniso; exactly, ngokucokisa.
- Accurse, v.t.** Ukuqalekisa.
- Accusation, n.** Ityala.
- Accuse, v.t.** Ukunikwa ityala, generally; ukuxoka umntu, falsely; ukunuka umntu, of witchcraft.
- Accuser, n.** Umniki-tyala.
- Accustom, v.** To be accustomed ukuqhela; to make familiar, ukuqhelisa.
- Ache, n.** Pain generally, ubuhlungu; but special pain or ache is expressed thus:—I have a headache, *ndinentloko*; I have toothache, *ndinezinyo*.
- Acid, adj.** Muncu.
- Acknowledge, v.t.** As true, ukuvumela.
- Acknowledgement, n.** Imvumo; ukuvuma.
- Acquaint, v.t.** Generally, ukwazisa: officially, ukubeka
- Acquaintance, n.** Umhlobo.
- Acquiesce, v.i.** Ukugoba; ukuvuma.
- Acquiescence, n.** Ukuvuma imvumo.
- Acquire, v.t.** Ukufumana.
- Acquisition, n.** Of wealth. imfuyo.
- Acquit, v.t.** Ukugwebela.
- Acquittal, n.** Ukugwetyelwa.
- Across, a.** Ngokunqamleza.
- Act, v.t.** Ukwenza; *n.* isenzo.
- Acted, part.** Yenziwe.
- Action, n.** Isenzo.
- Active, adj.** Phaphile; khaliphile khuthele.
- Activity, n.** Ukuphapha; ukuqabuka.
- Actor, n.** Doer or maker, umenzi.
- Acute, a.** Sharp, brave, khaliphile; wise, lumkile.
- Add, v.t.** Ukongeza; ukuhlomela.
- Addict, v.ti.** Of habit; good or bad, ukuziqhelisa.

- Address, v.t.** An individual, speak to, ukuthetha.
- Address, n.** Isishumayelo ; isiyalo.
- Adhere, v.i.** Of material substances, ukuncamathela ; applied to persons or truth, ukunamathela.
- Adherence, n.** Isinamathelo ; ukunamathela.
- Admirable, a.** Entle ; kuhle.
- Admire, v.t.** Ukubuka.
- Admission, n.** Ukungena ; isingeniso.
- Admit, v.t.** Ukungenisa, to a place : ukuvuma, a truth or charge.
- Admittance, n.** Ukungena ; ukungenisa.
- Admonish, v.t.** By warning, ukuyala ; by instruction, ukululeka.
- Admonition, n.** Isiyalo ; isiluleko.
- Adopt, v.t.** Ukumisa ngobunyana ; or ukudala.
- Adoption, n.** Ukumiswa ngobunyana ; or ukudalelwa ubunyana.
- Adore, v.t.** Ukubuka ngothando.
- Adorn, v.t.** Ukuhombisa.
- Adornment, n.** Isihombo.
- Adult, n.** Umntu.
- Adulterer, n.** Umkrexezi.
- Adulteress, n.** Umkrexezikazi.
- Advance, v.i.** Ukuhambisa, to go forward ; ukunyusa to promote.
- Advantage, n.** Uncedo, help, umvuzo, reward.
- Adversary, n.** Utshaba.
- Adversity, n.** Calamity, misfortune, misery, ilishwa ; poverty, ubuhlwempu.
- Advertise, v.t.** Ukwazisa.
- Advertisement, n.** Isaziso.
- Advice, n.** Icebo
- Advise, v.t.** Ukucebisa.
- Afar, adv.** Kude ; le.
- Affair, n.** Umcimbi.
- Affectation, n.** Izenziso.
- Affection, Love, uthando ; desire, umnqweno.**
- Affectionately, adv.** Ngothando.
- Affirm, v.t.** Ukutsho ; ukuthetha.
- Affix, v.t.** Ukuhlorella ; ukuncamathisela.
- Afflict, v.t.** Ukubandezela.
- Affliction, n.** Imbandezelo.
- Afoot, adv.** Ngeenyawo.
- Afraid, a.** Oyika.
- Afraid, to make.** Ukoyikisa.
- After, prep.** is expressed in various ways, as :—
1. In place, by *emva, ngasemva*.
  2. In time, *emveni, emveni kweni*.
  3. By form of the verb :—
    - (1) To follow after, *ukulandela*.
    - (2) To seek or go after a lost animal, *ukuphuthuma*.
- Afternoon, n.** Ukumka kwelanga, *lit.*, the going of the sun.
- Afterwards, adv.** Emva ; emveni.
- Again, adv.** is expressed variously :—
1. A second time, *kanjako*.
  2. Frequently, again and again, *futhi*.
  3. In a narrative by the verbs, *ukuphinda ; or ukubuya*. He again spoke, *waphinda wathetha*.

Against, *prep.* is expressed by—

1. *Ngaku*, opposition, as:—  
he fought against them, *walwa ngakubo*.

2. *Ngase*; nearness, as:—  
against the house, *ngasendlwini*.

3. By the sense of the verb:—  
as in the word *ukwayama*, as,  
the spades are leaning against  
the wall, *imihlakulo yayama*  
*eludongeni*.

Age, *n.* Ubudala.

Aged, *a.* Mdala.

Aged-man, *n.* Ixhego; umntu  
omdala.

Aged-woman, *n.* Ixhegokazi;  
umfazi omdala.

Agent, *n.* Umphathi; umenzi.

Aggravate, *v.t.* Ukukhulisa. To  
aggravate an evil, *ukukhulisa*  
*ububi*; to aggravate a fault,  
*ukukhulisa ityala*.

Aggression, *n.* Beginning of a  
quarrel *isiqalo semfazwe*.

Agitate, *v.t.* To trouble mentally,  
*ukuzamazamisa*; *ukuthukuthe-*  
*zela*; to rouse or re-open, *uku-*  
*vusa into*.

Agitated, to be. *Ukuzanyazanyi-*  
*swa*; *m* being changed into *ny*  
in the passive form.

Ago, long, *adv.* Kade; kukade;  
kudala.

Agreeable, *a.* To mind or senses,  
*mnandi*; to sight, *hle*; *intle*; *om-*  
*hle*; suitable, fit, proper, *fanele*.

Agree, *v.t.* Ukuvuma.

Agreement, *n.* Imvumelwano.

Agreement, *n.* Mental, *imvu-*  
*melwano*; covenant, *umnqophi-*

*so*; resemblance, likeness, *uku-*  
*fana*.

Aid, *v.t.* Ukunceda; *n.* uncedo.

Aim, to, *v.t.* With a weapon or  
gun, *ukujolisa*; to endeavour,  
work for, *ukusebenzela*; to seek  
or strive to obtain, *ukungxamela*.

Air, *n.* Atmosphere, *umoya*; *n.*  
manner, conduct, *isimilo*; *uku-*  
*mila*.

Alarm, *n.* Ivuso; *v.t.*, *ukuvusa*.

Alike, *a.* Fana.

Alive, *a.* Philile; hleli.

All or every, *a.* Onke.

1. Onke, with the prefix  
varying with the class of noun;  
every man, *umntu wonke*; all  
the people, *abantu bonke*; all  
the horses, *amahashe onke*;  
all things, *izinto zonke*; every  
thing, *yonke into*; all the ser-  
vants, *izicaka zonke*; all the  
rivers, *imilambo yonke*.

2. The whole, all that, *konke*  
*oko*; all this, *konke oku*.

Almighty, *n.* Onamandla onke.

Almost, *adv.* Nearly, *phantse*; it  
is used with the personal pro-  
noun followed by the infinitive  
of the verb. I almost fell, *nda-*  
*phantse ukuwa*; he almost died,  
*waphantse ukubhubha*.

Allow, *v.t.* Ukuvumela.

Aloe, *n.* Umhlaba; ikhala.

Alone, *a.* Odwa, with prefix varying  
as the noun. *Ndedwa*, I alone;  
*yedwa*, he alone.

Aloud, *adv.* Ngokuxokozela.

Already, *adv.* is expressed by the

particle *se*, apart of the verb "to remain," ukusala; *se* is prefixed to the pronoun, except the 2nd person singular of the verb, as:— I have already come, *sendifikile*; he was already dead, *ubesel-ebhubhile*.

**Alphabet, n.** Amagama encwadi.

**Also, adv.**, is expressed by the particle *na* before nouns and pronouns. I also, *nam*; you also *nawe*; he also, *naye*; we also, *nathi*; you also, *nawe*; they also *nabo*.

**Although, conj.** Nangona; nakuba; koko.

**Altogether, adv.**

1. Wholly, *kanye*; this food is altogether bad, *oku kutya kubi kanye*.

2. United action, *kunye*; pull altogether, *tsalani kunye*.

**Always, adv.**

1. At all times, *amaxesha onke*.

2. Everlasting, *naphakade*.

3. Frequently, *futhi*; or by particle *wa*, before the root of the verb, as:—the child is always crying, *umntwana uyawcalila*. He is always speaking about that matter, *uyawathetha ngaloo nto*.

**Am**, is expressed in different ways according as it is used before a verb, a noun or an adjective.

1. BEFORE A VERB it is expressed by the verbal prefix or pronoun *ndi*, I, with or without the auxiliary verb, *ukuya*, to go or *ukuba*, to be: thus:—

*I am speaking, Ndiyatheth.*  
or *Nditheth aa*

*I am writing, Ndiyabhala.*  
*Ndibhala.*

The long form is used when the verb is emphatic, or when it is used as the predicate in the sentence.

2. BEFORE A NOUN—AM is expressed also by the pronoun *ndi*, I, but with another syllable added. That is called the euphonic syllable or letter of the noun. It varies with each class of nouns, and is *ngu* with the first class; *i* with the second; *yi* with the third; *si* with the fourth; and so on. Thus, with a noun of

#### CLASS.

i. *I am a man Ndingumntu.*

ii. *I am a doctor, Ndiligqira.*

iii. *I am chief, Ndiyinkosi.*

iv. *I am a servant Ndisisicaka.*

3. BEFORE AN ADJECTIVE OR ADVERB, AM is expressed by the personal pronoun *ndi*, I, without any other syllable, thus—

*I am hungry, Ndilambile.*

*I am thirsty, Ndinxaniwe.*

*I am tired, Ndidiniwe.*

*I am here, Ndilapha.*

*I am present, Ndikho.*

But sometimes when a noun is used as an adjective the euphonic syllable is also used, as—

*I am poor, Ndilhlwempu.*

*i.e., I am a poor man.*

**Amazed, to be, v.i.** *Ukumangaliswa.*

**Amuse, v.t.** Ukulibalisa ; ukulibazisa.

**An, indef. article.** There is no indefinite article in Xhosa except what is supplied by the prefixes of the noun, as :—a horse, *ihashe* ; an arm, *ingalo* ; an owl, *isikhova* ; an eagle, *ukhozi* ; an infant, *usana*.

**And,** The English conjunction AND is expressed in various ways according as it is used, *first* between nouns, pronouns, adverbs, and conjunctions, and also between the infinitives of verbs ; or *second*, between the tenses of verbs ; or *third*, at the commencement of a sentence.

Generally under the first division as given above it is expressed by the particle *na*. This, however, is changed into *ne* before a noun or other word beginning with *i* or *e*, and into *no* before a noun or other word beginning with *u*, according to the usual coalition of vowels.

1. (a) Between nouns or other words, the second of which begins in *a* ; thus—

Men and boys,  
Amadoda *namakhwenkwe*.  
Women and children.  
Abafazi *nabantwana*,  
Fire and water,  
Umlilo *namanzi*.

And also in these forms

Here *and* there,  
Apha *naphaya*.  
You *and* he,  
Wena *naye*.

They *and* you,  
Bona *nawe*.

(b) Between nouns or other words, the second of which begins with *e* or *i* ; thus—

Horses *and* dogs.  
Amahashe *nezinja*.  
Sheep *and* goats,  
Izimvu *ncebhokhwe*.  
Night *and* day,  
Ubusuku *nemini*.

(c) Between nouns and other words, the second of which begins in *o* or *u*, or a consonant ; thus—

Life *and* death,  
Ubomi *nokufa*.  
Light *and* darkness,  
Ukukhanya *nobumnyama*.

(d) Between the infinitives of verbs—

To work *and* to rest,  
Ukusebenza *nokuphumla*.  
To eat *and* to sleep,  
Ukudla *nokulala*.  
To speak *and* to listen,  
Ukuthetha *nokuva*.

2. *But between the tenses of verbs*, AND is expressed differently, sometimes not expressed at all in Xhosa. The Present Subjunctive is used as second verb without any particle intervening and the sentence is elliptical, the word *ukuze*, or *ukuba*, meaning *that, in order that*, being understood ; thus :—

Go *and* work,  
Hamba *usebenze* ; equal to—  
Go *in order that* you may work.  
Take your book *and* read,

- Thabatha incwadi yakho *ulese*.  
 Take your pen *and write*,  
 Thabatha usiba lwakho *ubhale*.  
 Take your horse *and ride* quickly  
 o the village.  
 Thabatha ihashe lakho *ukhwele*  
 uye emzini kamsinya.
3. **AND** is also expressed in  
 the continuation of a narrative,  
 or in commencing a new sen-  
 tence by the particle *ke* ; or by  
 the verbs *ukuthi*, to say, *ukuza*,  
 to come ; sometimes by *kanjalo*,  
 and other words, as :—  
*Ndaza ndafika. And* I arrived.  
*Waza wathetha, And* he spoke.  
**NA** *prefixed* to a word some-  
 times means *also, even*, as *nawe*,  
*you also, even you, etc.*
- Anger**, *n.* Umsindo ; *v.t.* ukuqu-  
 mba, to be angry ; ukuqumbisa,  
 to make angry.
- Animal**, *n.* Isilo ; inyamakazi.
- Ankle**, *n.* Iqatha.
- Announce**, *v.t.* Ukushumayela.
- Annoy**, *v.t.* Ukukhathaza ; uku-  
 caphukisa.
- Annoyance**, *n.* Inkathazo.
- Another**, *a.* Mbi, one of a dif-  
 ferent kind.  
*Nye*, one of the same kind, but  
 referring to another person or  
 thing.  
 Another or additional man, *omnye*  
 umntu.  
 Another or different person, *wu-*  
*mbi* umntu.  
 Another or additional house, *enye*  
 indlu.  
 Another or different kind of  
 house, *yimbi* indlu.
- Another or additional basket,  
*esinye* isitya.  
 Another basket of a different  
 kind, *simbi* isitya.
- Answer**, *n.* Impendulo ; *v.t.* uku-  
 phendula ; ukusabela.
- Ant**, *n.* Imbovane, red ; intubi,  
 white ; isaphompolo, black.
- Anxiety**, *n.* Isithukuthezi ; ixhala.
- Apostle**, *n.* Umpostile.
- Appear**, *v.i.* Ukubonakala ; uku-  
 vela.
- Appearance**, *n.* Ukubonakala ;  
 ukuvela ; isibonakalo ; imbo-  
 nakalo.
- Appease**, *v.t.* Anger, ukudambisa  
 umsindo ; to lessen fear, uku-  
 xolisa intliziyo ; noise, confusion,  
 ukuzolisa.
- Appetite**, *n.* Generally, um-  
 nqweno, unqweno ; for food,  
 umnqweno wokutya.
- Applaud**, *v.t.* Ukubonga ; uku-  
 dumisa ; ukuthakazela, by ex-  
 clamation.
- Applause**, *n.* Isibongo.
- Appoint**, *v.t.* Ukumisa.
- Approach**, *v.t.* Ukusondela.
- Approval**, *n.* Imvumo.
- Archer**, *n.* Umtoli.
- Are**, is expressed by various syl-  
 lables or particles according as  
 it is used before, or as a part of a  
 verb, or before a noun, or before  
 an adjective ; thus—  
 1. **BEFORE A VERB**—It is  
 expressed by the verbal prefix or  
 pronoun—*si*, we ; *ni*, ye ; *ba*, they  
 —with or without the auxiliary  
 verb thus :—

*We are speaking, siyathetha ;*  
or without the auxiliary verb,  
*sithetha.*

*You are speaking, niyathetha ;*  
or *nithetha.*

*They are speaking, bayathetha*  
or *bathetha.*

The above is the form for personal pronouns. Use the long form when the verb is emphatic, or when the verb is the predicate.

2. WITH A NOUN—Each of the eight classes of nouns takes its own special form to express the word "are" when used with a verb. This is *ba* or *baya* with the first class ; *a* or *aya* with the second ; *zi* or *ziya* with the third, fourth, and fifth ; and *i* or *iya* with the sixth ; thus—

CLASS.

- I. The people *are* walking.  
Abantu *bayahamba* ; or *bahamba.*
- II. The horses *are* running,  
Amahashe *ayabaleka* ; or *abaleka.*

CLASS.

- III. The dogs *are* barking,  
Izinja *ziyakhonkotha* ; or *zikhonkotha.*
- IV. The servants *are* working,  
Izicaka *ziyasebenza* ; or *zisebenza.*
- V. The infants *are* crying,  
Iintsana *ziyalila* ; or *zilila.*
- VI. The trees *are* growing,  
Imithi *iyakhula* ; or *ikhula.*

3 WHEN USED WITH ADJECTIVES  
—ARE is expressed before an

adjective following a noun by the same prefixes as with verbs, but without the auxiliary verb *ya.*

CLASS.

- I. The people *are* hungry,  
Abantu *balambile.*
- II. The horses *are* dead  
Amahashe *afile.*
- III. The bags *are* empty,  
Iingxowa *zize.*
- IV. The baskets *are* full,  
Izitya *zizele.*
- V. The children *are* hungry,  
Iintsana *zilambile*
- VI. The rivers *are* deep,  
Imilambo *inzulu.*

Seventh and eighth classes have no plural.

3. WHEN USED WITH ADVERBS AND OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH  
—Same prefixes as with the adjective.

CLASS.

- I. The people *are* far away,  
Abantu *bakude.*
- II. The horses *are* near,  
Amahashe *akufuphi.*

CLASS.

- III. The dogs *are* there,  
Izinja *zikhona.*
- IV. The servants *are* yonder,  
Izicaka *ziphaya.*
- V. The children *are* with her,  
Iintsana *zinaye.*

**Argue, v.t.** Ukuphika ; phikisa.

**Argument, n.** Impikiswano ; isiphikiswano ; uphikiswano.

**Arise, v.t.** Ukusuka ; ukuma ; ukuphuma.

**Arm, n.** Ingalo.

- Arm, to, v.t.** Ukuxhoba ; ukuxhobisa, to furnish with weapons.
- Armlet, n.** Isacholo ; of ivory worn above the elbow, umxhaka.
- Armpit, n.** Ikhwapha.
- Arms, n.** Weapons, izixhobo.
- Army, n.** Impi ; umkhosi.
- Around, to turn, v.t.** Ukujika ; ukujikela, to arrange about any matter.
- Arouse, v.t.** Ukuvusa.
- Arrange, to, v.t.** Ukulungisa ; ukucwangcisa.
- Array, to, or adorn, v.i.** Ukuvathisa ; ukuhombisa.
- Arrest, v.t.** Ukubamba, to seize as a prisoner ; ukulibazisa, ukuthintela, to hinder or obstruct progress.
- Arrival, a new, n.** Umfiki.
- Arrive, v.i.** Ukufika.
- Arrogance, n.** Ikratshi ; also ubukhali.
- Arrogant, adj.** Nekratshi ; nobukhali.
- Arrow, n.** Utolo.
- Art, n.** Ubungcibi.
- Artful, adj.** Lumkile ; namaqhinga.
- Artfully, adv.** Ngobulumko ; ngamaqhinga.
- Articles, n.** Izinto.
- Artifice, n.** Iqhinga ; inkohliso.
- Artizan, n.** Ingcibi.
- As if, as though.** Njengokungathi.
- As, of old, Ngokudala ; njengokwakudala.**
- As far as I am concerned.** Ngokwam.
- Ascend, v.i.** Ukunyuka ; to ascend towards, ukunyukela.
- Ascendancy, n.** Ubukhosi ; ukulawula.
- Ascension, n.** Ukunyuka ; isinyuko.
- Ascent, n.** Ukunyuka.
- Ascertain, v.t.** To search or examine, ukuvavanya ; to prove or establish, ukuqinisa.
- Ashamed, adj.** Danile ; neentloni. as :—I am ashamed, *ndinentloni*. I am disappointed, *ndidanile*.
- Ashes, n.** Uthuthu.
- Aside, to go, v.i.** ukudeda ; ukushenxa.
- Ask, v.t.** Ukubuza, asking a question ; ukucela, asking a thing ; ukucela, ask for ; ukubiza, claim ; ukubuzela, to enquire for.
- Ass, n.** Iesile.
- Assail, v.t.** With argument, ukuphika ; with weapons, ukulwa.
- Assegai, n.** Umkhonto.
- Assemble, v.i.** Ukuhlangana ; ukuhlanganisa, to collect or bring together.
- Assembly, n.** Intlanganiso.
- Assent, v.i.** Ukuvuma.
- Assert, v.i.** Ukutsho.
- Assist, v.t.** Ukunceda ; ukusiza.
- Assistance, n.** Uncedo.
- Assistant, n.** Umncedisi.
- Asthma, n.** Iphika.
- Astonish, v.t.** Ukumangalisa.
- Astonished, to be, Ukuthi nqa.**
- Astonishing, adj.** Mangalisayo.
- Astonishment, n.** Ummangalisayo.
- Astray, adj.** Lahlekile.
- Astray, to go, v.i.** Ukulahleka.
- Asunder, adv.** Ahlukile.
- Asunder, v.t.** To cut asunder, ukunqamla.





## B

- Baby, n.** Usana.  
**Baboon, n.** Imfene.  
**Bachelor, n.** Isoka.  
**Back, n.** Umhlana; *v.i.* Ukubuya, to go back.  
**Backbite, v.t.** Ukuhleba; ukujinda,  
**Backbone, n.** Umqolo.  
**Backward, adv.** Ngomva.  
**Bacon, n.** Inyama yehangu.  
**Bad, adj.** Bi, generally; khohlakele, morally.  
**Badly, adv.** Ngokukhohlakeleyo, morally, ngobubi.  
**Badness, n.** Ububi.  
**Bag, n.** Ingxowa.  
**Bake, v.t.** Ukoja; ukosa.  
**Ball, n.** Imbumbulu.  
**Band, n.** Ibandla, company; umtya, string, tie.  
**Bandage, n.** Isibopho.  
**Banish, n.** Ukugxotha.  
**Bank, n.** Udonga, of earth; indlu yemali, or ibanka, where money is kept.  
**Banns, n.** Of marriage, isishumayelo somtshato.  
**Baptise, v.t.** Ukubhaptiza; ukubhaptizesha; ukuphehlelela.  
**Baptism, n.** Ubhaptizesho; uphehlelelo.  
**Bar, n.** Umvalo, of a gate; ukuvalela, *v.t.* to shut out.  
**Bare, a.** Ze; *n.* ubuze, bareness.  
**Bark, n.** Ixolo, of a tree; ukukhonkotha, *v.i.* as a dog.  
**Barley, n.** Irasi.  
**Barrel, n.** Ifatyi.  
**Base, a.** Bi; khohlakele.
- Basket, n.** Isitya; ithunga, milk basket.  
**Bat, n.** Ilulwane.  
**Bathe, v.i.** Ukuhlamba; ukuqubha.  
**Battle, n.** Idabi; ukulwa.  
**Bawl, v.i.** Ukukhala.  
**Be, v.i.** Ukuba, substant, verb; ukubakho, to be present; ukungabikho, to be absent.  
**Beam, n.** Umqadi; isibonda, or umthi, of a house.  
**Beans, n.** Iimbotyi.  
**Beard, n.** Iindevu.  
**Beast, n.** Isilo; iramncwa; inyamakazi.  
**Beat, v.t.** Ukubetha; ukoyisa, to overcome.  
**Beautiful, a.** Inzwana; inzwakazi with a noun.  
**Beauty, n.** Ubuhle.  
**Because, conj.** Kuba; ngokuba; kungokuba, it is because.  
**Beckon, v.t.** Ukukhoba.  
**Bed, n.** Ukhuko; isilili, sleeping place.  
**Bee, n.** Inyosi.  
**Beef, n.** Inyama yenkomo.  
**Beer, n.** Utywala; umqomboti.  
**Beetle, n.** Ibhungane.  
**Before, adv. and adj.** Phambi; phambili; also by *ka* and negative of verb, meaning "not yet."  
**Beg, v.t.** Ukungqiba; ukucela, to ask help, or for something.  
**Beggar, n.** Umngqibi; ingqiba.  
**Begin, v.t.** Ukuqala.  
**Beginning, n.** Ukuqaleka; ukuqala.  
**Begun, p.** Qaleke; qalile; qaliwe.

- Behind**, *prep.* Emva, in place; emvenikweni, in time.
- Behold**, *v.i.* Ukukhangela; bona; khangela, imperative.
- Belief**, *n.* Ukholo.
- Believer**, *n.* Ikholwa.
- Bell**, *n.* Intsimbi.
- Bellow**, *v.i.* Ukukhonya; ukukhala.
- Bellows**, *n.* Imfutho.
- Belly**, *n.* Isisu.
- Below**, *adv.* and *prep.* Phantsi; ngaphantsi; ezantsi.
- Belt**, *n.* Umtya wesinqe.
- Bend**, *v.t.* Ukuthoba; *v.i.* ukugoba.
- Beneath**, *prep.* Phantsi; ngaphantsi.
- Benefit**, *n.* Uncedo; *v.t.* ukunceda.
- Benevolence**, *n.* Isisa.
- Benevolent**, *a.* Nesisa.
- Beseech**, *v.t.* Ukuthandaza; ukukhunga; ukubongoza.
- Besides**, *adv.* Ngaphandle.
- Bestow**, *v.t.* Ukunikela; ukupha.
- Between**, *prep.* Phakathi.
- Beware**, *v.i.* Ukulumka.
- Beyond**, *prep.* Phešheya; ele; ese.
- Bible**, *n.* Ibhayibhile; ilizwi lika-Thixo.
- Bid**, *v.t.* Ukuyalela; ukunika ilizwi.
- Big**, *a.* Khulu.
- Bigness**, *n.* Ubukhulu.
- Bind**, *v.t.* Ukubopha; ukunxiba.
- Bird**, *n.* Intaka.
- Bird's nest**, *n.* Indlu yentaka.
- Birth**, *n.* Inzalo; ukuzalwa.
- Bit**, *n.* Umkhala, of a bridle; i-ntwana, a small piece.
- Bite**, *v.t.* Ukuluma.
- Bitter**, *a.* Krakia.
- Black**, *a.* Mnyama.
- Blacksmith**, *n.* Umkhandi.
- Blame**, *v.t.* Isonakalo.
- Blanket**, *n.* Ingubo.
- Blemish**, *n.* Isonakalo.
- Bless**, *v.t.* Ukuthamsanqela; ukusikelela.
- Blind**, *a.* Mfamekile; imfama, a blind man.
- Blindly**, *adv.* Ngobumfama.
- Blindness**, *n.* Ubumfama.
- Blood**, *n.* Igazi.
- Blow**, *v.t.* Ukuvuthela, blow the fire; ukuvuthuza, as the wind; ukuphephetha, to blow off as dust.
- Blue**, *a.* Luhlaza.
- Blunt**, *a.* Buthuntu.
- Bluntly**, *adv.* Ngobuthuntu.
- Bluntness**, *n.* Ubuthuntu.
- Board**, *n.* Iplanga.
- Boast**, *v.i.* Ukuqhayisa; ukuzixhumisa.
- Body**, *n.* Umzimba, isidumbu, dead body.
- Bog**, *n.* Umgxobhozo.
- Boil**, *n.* Ithumba; *v.t.* ukubilisa to boil.
- Bold**, *a.* Nobukroti; sile, rude.
- Boldness**, *n.* Ubukroti.
- Bone**, *n.* Ithambo.
- Book**, *n.* Incwadi.
- Boot**, *n.* Isihlangu.
- Bore**, *v.i.* Ukuphehla.
- Both**, *adv.* Na, nase, before the locative of the noun; also by numeral *hini*, two, with prefixes, as *bobabini*, both persons; amahashe *mabini*, both horses.
- Bottle**, *n.* Intsuba; imbodlela.

- Bottom, *n.* Umzantsi.  
 Bought, *a.* Thengiwe.  
 Boundary, *n.* Umda.  
 Bountiful, *a.* Nesisa ; nobubele.  
 Bow, *v.t.* Ukugoba ; ukuthoba.  
 Bowels, *n.* Amathumbu.  
 Box, Ityesi ; ibhokisi.  
 Boy, *n.* Inkwenkwe.  
 Branch, *n.* Isebe : *pl.* amasebe.  
 Brass, *n.* Inxina.  
 Bread, *n.* Isonka.  
 Breadth, *n.* Uhubanzi.  
 Break, *v.t.* Ukuqhekeza ; ukwaphula ; ukugqobhoza, to break through.  
 Breakfast, *n.* Iblakfesi.  
 Breath, *n.* Umoya ; umphefumlo.  
 Breathe, *v.t.* Ukuphefumla.  
 Brick, *n.* Isitena.  
 Bridegroom, *n.* Umyeni.  
 Bridle, *n.* Umkhala.  
 Broad, *a.* Banzi.  
 Broadness, *n.* Uhubanzi.  
 Broil, *v.t.* Ukoja ; ukosa.  
 Broil, *n.* Ingxolo ; impikiswano.  
 Brook, *n.* Umlanjana.  
 Broth, *n.* Umhluzi.  
 Brother, *n.* Umkhuluwe, elder brother ; umninawe, younger brother.  
 Brown, *a.* Mfusa.  
 Bruise, *v.t.* Ukukhuthula.  
 Bucket, *n.* Umphanda.  
 Buckle, *n.* Ikhonkco.  
 Buffalo, *n.* Inyathi.  
 Build, *v.t.* Ukwakha.  
 Builder, *n.* Umakhi  
 Building, *a.* Isakhiwo.  
 Bullet, *n.* Imbumbulu.  
 Bullock, *n.* Inkabi yenkomo.  
 Bundle, *n.* Isithungu, of grass forage ; inyanda, of sticks firewood.  
 Burden, *n.* Umthwalo.  
 Burn, *v.t.* Ukutshisa ; *v.i.* ukutsha.  
 Bury, Ukungcwaba.  
 Bush, *n.* Ihlathi, forest ; udada thicket, ityholo.  
 But, *conj.* Kodwa ; koko.  
 Butter, *n.* Ibhotolo.  
 Butterfly, *n.* Ibhadi.  
 Button, *n.* Iqhosha ; iqula.  
 Buy, *v.t.* Ukuthenga.  
 Buyer, *n.* Umthengi.  
 By, *prep.* Nga, nge, ngo, before nouns, pronouns, and by the passive form of the verb.

## C

- Cabbage, *n.* Ikhapheji.  
 Calabash, *n.* Iselwa.  
 Calamity, *n.* Ilishwa ; isihelegu.  
 Calf, *n.* Inkonyana ; ithole.  
 Calico, *n.* Ikaliko.  
 Call, *v.t.* Ukubiza, ukumema, to invite.  
 Calm, *a.* Zolile

Can, is expressed in two ways :

1. By the auxiliary verb *ukungwa* with the pronouns or noun which forms the nominative prefixed, and followed by the chief verb, as :—

I can walk,  
 Ndingahamba.

You *can* ride.

Ungakhwela.

He *can* follow.

Angalandela.

We *can* go home,

Singagoduka.

You *can* stay here,

Ningahlala apha.

They *can* return to the village,

Bangabuyela emzini.

2. By the particles *na* and *ko* with noun or pronoun prefixed, according to the class. This form of *can* expresses *ability* and *power* as well as permission, as :—

*I can* or *am able* to do that,

Ndinakho ukwenza loo nto.

You *can* pay.

Unakho ukubhatala.

He *can* or *is able* to help you,

Unakho ukukunceda.

We *can* or *are able* to carry that case or box,

Sinakho ukuthwala loo kasi.

You *can* read and write,

Ninakho ukufunda nokubhala.

They *can* do that work.

Banakho ukwenza loo msebenzi.

**Cannot**, is expressed in the same way, but with *negative tense form* of the verb in the first examples, as :—

*I cannot* walk,

Andingehambi.

*You cannot* ride,

Akungekhweli.

*He cannot* follow,

Akangelandeli.

*We cannot* go home.

Asingegoduki.

*You cannot* stay here,

Aningehlali apha.

*They cannot* return to the village,

Abangebuyeli emzini.

By the use of the *negative prefixes* before the *personal pronouns* in the second examples, as :—

*I cannot* walk,

Andinakho ukuhamba.

*You cannot* ride,

Akunakho ukukhwela.

*He cannot* follow,

Akanakho ukulandela.

*We cannot* go home,

Asinakho ukugoduka.

*You cannot* stay here,

Aninakho ukuhlala apha.

*They cannot* return to the village,

Abanakho ukubuyela emzini.

**Candle**, *n.* Isibane.

**Canteen**, *n.* Ikantini.

**Canter**, *v.i.* Ukuphala.

**Carcass**, *n.* Isidumbu.

**Care**, *n.* Isithukuthezi ; ixhala ; inkathalo.

**Careful**, *a.* Nokulumka.

**Carelessly**, *adv.* Ngokungakhatali.

**Carry**, *v.t.* Ukuthwala, a burden ; and various words, as carry in the hand, on the head, etc.

**Cart**, *n.* Ikari.

**Cask**, *n.* Ifatyi.

**Cast**, *v.t.* Ukuphosa ; ukugibisela, stones ; ukulahla, to cast away ; ukugxotha, to cast out, etc.

**Cat**, *n.* Imbodla, wild cat ; ikati, domestic.

**Cattle**, *n.* Iinkomo.

- Cause, v.t.** Ukubanga ; ukudala, to create ; or causative form of the verb.
- Cause, n.** Ithuba ; isizathu.
- Cease, v.t.** Ukupheza ; ukuyeka.
- Certain, a.** Yinyaniso ; nyanisile, true. Thile, referring to a certain day or person.
- Chaff, n.** Amakhathshu.
- Chain, n.** Umxokelelwane.
- Chair, n.** Isitulo.
- Change, v.t.** Ukuguquka, conduct ; ukwanana, a thing ; ukutshintsha, money.
- Chapter, n.** Isahluko.
- Character, n.** Isimilo.
- Cheat, v.t.** Ukukhohlisa ; ukuqhatha.
- Cheek, n.** Isidlele.
- Chest, n.** Ityeya.
- Chew, v.t.** Ukuhlafuna ; ukuqabula, tobacco.
- Chicken, n.** Intshontsho lenkuku.
- Chief, n.** Inkosi.
- Child, n.** Umntwana.
- Chin, n.** Isilevu.
- Church, n.** Ityalike, building ; iremente, congregation.
- Churn, v.t.** Ukuphehla ; *n.* imphelo, a churn.
- City, n.** Isixeko.
- Clothes, n.** Izivatho.
- Coat, n.** Ibhathyi.
- Coffee, n.** Ikofu.
- Cold, a.** Banda.
- Colic, n.** Isisu.
- Collect, v.t.** Ukubutha ; ukuhlanganisa.
- Colour, n.** Ibala.
- Comb, v.i.** Ukuchaza ; *n.* inkcazo, a comb
- Come, v.i.** Ukuza.
- Command, v.t.** Ukuphatha ; ukulawula.
- Commit, v.t.** Ukunikela ; ukuphosisa, a fault.
- Companion, n.** Umlingane.
- Company, n.** Ibandla.
- Compare, v.t.** Ukulinganisa ; ukufanisa.
- Compel, v.t.** Ukuqhuba.
- Complain, n.** Ukukhala ; ukukrokra ; ukukhalaza.
- Copceal, v.i.** Ukufihla ukuqhusheka.
- Condemn, v.t.** Ukugweba.
- Conduct, v.t.** Ukukhokelela ; ukuphaka.
- Confess, v.t.** Ukuvuma.
- Confuse, v.i.** Ukubhidekisa ; ukubhida.
- Conscience, n.** Isazela ; uvalo.
- Consider, v.t.** Ukucamanga.
- Contend, v.t.** Ukuphika ; ukuphikisana.
- Continually, adv.** Futhi.
- Contradict, v.t.** Ukukhanyeza.
- Conversation, n.** Incoko ; ukuncokola.
- Conversion, n.** Ukuguqula.
- Corner, n.** Igumbi, of a room ; imbombo, of a building outside.
- Correct, v.t.** Ukululeka ; ukuthethisa.
- Count, v.t.** Ukubala.
- Country, n.** Ilizwe.
- Courage, n.** Ubukroti ; isibindi.
- Cover, v.t.** Ukucika.
- Cow, n.** Imazi yenkomo.
- Coward, n.** Igwala ; ubugwala, cowardice.

- Crawl**, *v.i.* Ukukhasa as a child ; ukunambuza, as animals.  
**Cream**, *n.* Ucambu.  
**Create**, *v.t.* Ukudala.  
**Creator**, *n.* Umdali.  
**Creature**, *n.* Isidalwa.  
**Crime**, *n.* Isono ; ityala.  
**Cruel**, *a.* Lukhuni ; khohlakele.  
**Crush**, *v.t.* Ukutyumza.
- Cry**, *v.t.* Ukubiza, call ; ukulila weep ; ukukhala, to call out.  
**Cure**, *v.t.* Ukuphilisa ; *n.* impi-liso, a cure.  
**Curse**, *v.t.* Qalekisa.  
**Custom**, *n.* Isiko.  
**Cut**, *v.t.* Ukusika ; ukugawula, to cut down trees ; ukunqamla, to cut off.

D

- Daily**, *adv.* Imihla ngemihla.  
**Damage**, *n.* Ukwenzakala.  
**Dance**, *v.t.* Ukududa ; ukungqu-ngqa ; *n.* umdudo.  
**Danger**, *n.* Ingozi.  
**Dark**, *a.* Mnyama, prefix varying with the noun.  
**Darkness**, *n.* Ubumnyama.  
**Daub**, *v.t.* Ukutyabeka ; ukusinda.  
**Daughter**, *n.* Intombazana ; intombi.  
**Day**, *n.* Usuku, twenty-four hours ; imini, day-light ; umhla, day generally.  
**Dead**, *a.* File.  
**Deaf**, *a.* Sithulu.  
**Deafness**, *n.* Ubuthulu.  
**Dear**, *a.* Swelekile, scarce ; nqabile, in price ; thandekayo, beloved.  
**Death**, *n.* Ukufa ; ukubhubha.  
**Debt**, *n.* Ityala ; isikhweliti.  
**Deceit**, *n.* Inkohliso.  
**Deceive**, *v.t.* Ukukhohlisa.  
**Decision**, *n.* Isigwebo, legal ; ilizwi, individual judgment ; isigqibo, purpose.  
**Declare**, *v.i.* Ukuxela ; ukushumayela.
- Decoy**, *v.t.* Ukuhenda ; ukukhohlisa.  
**Deed**, *n.* Isenzo.  
**Deep**, *a.* Nzulu, with varying prefix.  
**Defeat**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa ; ukutshutshisa.  
**Defeat**, *n.* Isoyiso ; uloyiso ukoyisa.  
**Delay**, *v.i.* Ukulibala ; *v.t.* ukulibazisa.  
**Deliver**, *v.t.* Ukunikela, to hand over ; ukukhulula, from bondage ukusindisa, from danger.  
**Deliverance**, *n.* Usindiso ; inkululeko.  
**Demand**, *v.t.* Ukubiza.  
**Denial**, *n.* Ukukhanyela.  
**Deny**, *v.t.* Ukukhanyela, knowledge of ; ukulandula, a request.  
**Depart**, *v.i.* Ukumka ; ukunduluka.  
**Deprive**, *v.t.* Ukuhlutha, by force ; ukukhupha  
**Depth**, *n.* Ubunzulu.  
**Descend**, *v.i.* Ukuhla.  
**Describe**, *v.t.* Ukubalisa ; ukunqondisa ; ukucacisa.

- Description, n.** Ingqondiso ; inkcazelo, explanation.
- Desire, v.t.** Ukukhanuka ; ukunqwenela ; ukufuna.
- Despair, v.i.** Ukuncama.
- Despise, v.t.** Ukudela ; ukugxeka.
- Destroy, v.t.** Ukuchitha ; ukutshabalalisa ; ukonakalisa.
- Die, v.i.** Ukufa ; ukubhubha.
- Diet, n.** Ukutya.
- Differ, v.t.** Ukuphambana, ukwahlukana.
- Dig, v.i.** Ukumba.
- Diligent, a.** Khuthela.
- Dinner, n.** Idinala ; isidlo semini enkulu.
- Dinner-time, n.** Ixesha ledinala.
- Dip, v.t.** Ukutshonisa ; ukuthi nkxu.
- Direct, v.t.** Ukwalathisa, to show the way ; ukuyalela, to give orders.
- Directly, adj.** Ngoku ; kwangoku.
- Dirt, n.** Udaka, mud ; ukungcola, filth.
- Dirty, a.** Mdaka ; ngcolile.
- Disappear, v.i.** Ukutshona ; ukusithela ; ukuthi nya.
- Disappoint, v.t.** Ukudanisa.
- Disappointed, a.** Danile.
- Disappointment, n.** Ukudana ; indano ; udano.
- Discharge, v.t.** Ukukhulula, from service ; ukudubula, from a gun ; ukugwebela, from an accusation.
- Disciple, n.** Umfundu.
- Discontinue, v.t.** Ukupheza ; ukuyeka.
- Discord, n.** Impambano ; ingxolo, strife.
- Discover, v.t.** Ukutyhila ; ukufumana.
- Discreet, a.** Lunkile.
- Discuss, v.t.** Ukuxoxa ; ukuphikisana, to debate.
- Disdain, v.t.** Ukudela.
- Disease, n.** Isifo.
- Diseased, a.** Nesifo.
- Dish, n.** Isitya.
- Dismiss, v.t.** Ukundulula ; ukugxotha, in anger ; ukuchithakala.
- Disobedience, n.** Ukungeva.
- Dissipate, v.t.** Ukuchitha ; v.i. ukuthi bhanga.
- Distance, n.** Umgama okude, in space ; umzuzu, in time.
- Disturb, v.t.** Ukuvusa, to arouse, startle ; ukukhathaza, to trouble ; ukuchithisela, to frustrate a plan.
- Disturbance, n.** Ivuso, mentally ; isiphithiphithi, of a multitude.
- Ditch, n.** Umsela.
- Divide, v.t.** Ukwahlula, to divide in pieces ; ukuphikisana, in opinion ; ukwabela, in portions.
- Do, v.t.** Ukwenza.
- Do not ; Don't, Musa,** with a verb following ; or negative form of verb : as, don't speak, *mus'ukuthetha* or *ungathethi*. Don't try, *mus' ukulinga* or, *ungalingi*.
- Doctor, n.** Igqira.
- Doer, n.** Umenzi, maker.
- Door, n.** Ucango.
- Doubt, v.i.** Ukuthandabuza.
- Down, prep.** Ngaphantsi ; ngezantsi, below. See to put down, to throw down.
- Draw, v.t.** Ukutsala, drag ; ukurola, to draw out.
- Dream, n.** Iphupha.



- Dress**, *v.t.* Ukuvatha ; ukuvathisa ; ukunxiba.  
**Drink**, *v.t.* Ukusela.  
**Drive**, *v.t.* Ukuqhuba, forcibly ; ukuthundeza, gently ; ukubhexesha, horses.  
**Driver**, *n.* Umbhexeshi.  
**Drop**, *v.i.* Ukuthontsa ; *n.* ithontsi ; ukuwa, to fall down.  
**Drown**, *v.i.* Ukuntywila ; *v.t.* ukuntywilisa.  
**Drunk**, *a.* Nxilile.  
**Drunkard**, *n.* Inxila.  
**Dry**, *a.* Yomile ; *v.t.* ukomisa, to dry up ; *v.i.* ukomisa.  
**Duck**, *n.* Idada.  
**Dung**, *n.* Ubulongo, fresh ; umgquba, dry dung.  
**Dust**, *n.* Uthuli.  
**Dusty**, *n.* Imfanelo ; indawo efaneyo.  
**Dwell**, *v.i.* Ukuma ; ukuhlala.  
**Dwelling**, *n.* Indlu, house ; ikhaya, home ; umzi, village.

## E

- Each**, *pron.* Ngabanye ; ngamnye ; ngazinye, according to the noun. Abantu ngabanye, each of the persons ; amahashe ngamanye, each of the horses.  
**Eagle**, *n.* Ukhozi.  
**Ear**, *n.* Indlebe.  
**Early**, *adv.* Kusasa ; or the locative of the noun, ekuseni, early in the morning ; kwakusasa.  
**Earnest**, *a.* Ngxamile ; nyanisile.  
**Earth**, Umhlaba ; ihlabathi.  
**East**, *n.* Mpumalanga.  
**Easy**, *a.* Yonwabile, quiet ; lula, easy to do.  
**Eat**, *v.t.* Ukutya ; ukudla.  
**Edge**, *n.* Umphetho, border ; udini brim of cup.  
**Educate**, *v.t.* Ukufundisa ; ukululeka ; ukuqeqesha.  
**Education**, *n.* Isifundiso, instruction ; imfundo ; ingqeqesho.  
**Effort**, *n.* Umzamo ; ilinga, attempt.  
**Egg**, *n.* Iqanda, *pl.* amaqanda.  
**Elbow**, *n.* Inqwini.  
**Elder**, *n.* Omdala.  
**Elephant**, *n.* Indlovu.  
**Embrace**, *v.t.* Ukusingatha.  
**Empty**, *a.* Ze ; *n.* ubuze, emptiness.  
**Empty**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukukhupha.  
**End**, *n.* Incam, of a line or thing ; ukuphela ; isiphelo.  
**Endure**, *v.t.* Ukunyamezela.  
**Enemy**, *n.* Utshaba ; impi, an army.  
**Enjoy**, *v.i.* Ukuyola ; ukonwaba.  
**Enjoyment**, *n.* Isiyolo.  
**Enough**, *a.* Ninzi ; yanele.  
**Enter**, *v.i.* Ukungena ; *v.t.* ukungenisa.  
**Entice**, *v.t.* Ukuzinga ; ukucenga.  
**Envy**, *n.* Umona.  
**Equal**, *a.* Lingana ; yanele.  
**Err**, *v.i.* Ukuphosisa ; ukulahleka.  
**Error**, *n.* Isiphoso.  
**Erroneous**, *a.* Phosisekileyo.  
**Escape**, *v.t.* Ukusinda ; ukuphepha ; ukusaba.  
**Especially**, *adv.* Ngokukodwa.

- Establishment, v.t.** Ukumisa.  
**Esteem, n.** Imbeko *v.t.* ukubuka.  
**Eternal, a.** Ngonaphakade.  
**Eternity, n.** Unaphakade ; iphakade.  
**Evangelist, n.** Umvangeli.  
**Evasion, n.** Iqhinga.  
**Even, a.** Lungelelene, level ; njalo, or kunjalo, it is even so ; kwa, as kwanguye, even he.  
**Evening, n.** Ukuhlwa ; ngokuhlwa, in the evening.  
**Event, n.** Isihlo.  
**Ever, for, Kude kube ngunaphakade.**  
**Every day.** Imihla yonke.  
**Evidence, n.** Ubungqina.  
**Evident, a.** Ekuhleni.  
**Evil, n.** Inkohlakalo ; a. khohla-kele.  
**Exactly, adv.** Ukuthi nqwa ; kanye.  
**Example, n.** Umlinganiso, of things ; umzekeliso, of conduct.  
**Exceed, v.t.** Ukugqitha.  
**Exclude, v.t.** Ukukhupha.  
**Excuse, v.t.** Ukulandula ; ukuzithethelela.  
**Exhibit, v.t.** Ukubonisa.  
**Exhort, v.t.** Ukuyala  
**Exist, v.t.** Ukubakho.  
**Existence, n.** Ukubakho.  
**Expect, v.t.** Ukukhangela.  
**Expectation, n.** Ukukhangela.  
**Expel, v.t.** Ukugxotha.  
**Experience, n.** Amava ; *v.t.* ukwazana.  
**Expire, v.i.** Ukuphefumla.  
**Explain, v.t.** Ukucacisa.  
**Extend, v.t.** Ukwandisa ; ukwanela, to spread out.  
**Extent, n.** Ubude.  
**Extinguish, v.t.** Ukucima, a light or fire.  
**Extremity, n.** Incam ; the end of anything, rope, stick, etc.  
**Eye, n.** Iliso, *pl.* amehlo ; amaso, of things, as a needle.  
**Eyebrow, n.** Ishiyi.  
**Eyelid, n.** Ukhophe.

## F

- Fable, n.** Intsomi.  
**Face, n.** Ubuso.  
**Fact, n.** Into enyanisekileyo ; inyaniso ; inene.  
**Fade, v.i.** Ukubuna, as leaves ; ukuhlambuluka, as colours.  
**Faint, v.i.** Ukutyhafa.  
**Faith, n.** Ukholo.  
**Fall, ukuwa.**  
**False, a.** By a phrase. Asiyiyo nyaniso, it is not true.  
**Falsehood, n.** Ubuxoki ; ulwimi.  
**Family, n.** Usapho ; inzalo.  
**Famine, n.** Indlala.  
**Famous, a.** Dumile.  
**Far, a.** Kude.  
**Farewell, v.i.** Hlala kakuhle.  
**Fasten, v.t.** Ukubopha ; ukukhuleka ; ukukhonkxa, with a chain.  
**Fat, a.** Tyebile.  
**Father, n.** Ubawo, my father ; uyihlo, your father ; uyise, his father.  
**Fatigue, n.** Ukudinwa.  
**Fatten, v.t.** Ukutyebisa.

- Fault, n.** Isidlanga, defect ; ityala, moral fault.
- Favour, v.t.** Ukunceda ; *n.* uncedo.
- Fear, v.t.** Ukoyika ; *n.* isoyiko ; uloyiko.
- Feast, n.** Isidlo ; umthendeleko ; umsitho, a marriage feast.
- Feather, n.** Usiba.
- Fee, n.** Umvuzo, for service ; umlandu, Native doctor's fee.
- Feeble, a.** Ubuthathaka.
- Feebleness, n.** Buthathaka.
- Feel, v.t.** Ukuva, ukucofa, by handling ; ukuphuthaphutha, by groping, fumbling.
- Feet, n.** Iinyawo, human foot ; amanqina, cloven of animals ; iimpuphu, uncloven.
- Fellow, n.** Umlingane ; umfo.
- Female, a.** Kazi, following the noun. Ihashekazi, a mare ; intokazi, a woman ; inkosikazi, a lady, chief's wife.
- Few, a.** Mbalwa.
- Field, n.** Intsimi, cultivated land.
- Fig, n.** Ikhiwane.
- Fight, n.** Ukulwa ; imfazwe ; *v.t.* ukulwa.
- Fill, v.t.** Ukuzalisa.
- Final, a.** Okuphela.
- Find, a.** Ukufumana ; ukuchola, to pick up something lost.
- Finger, n.** Umnwe ; forefinger, inkomba ; ucikicane, little finger.
- Finish, v.t.** Ukupheza ; ukugqiba.
- Fire, n.** Umlilo : *v.t.* ukuphemba ; ukubasa ; to kindle a fire.
- Firewood, n.** Iinkuni.
- Firm, a.** Yomelela ; qinile.
- First, n.** Kuqala.
- Fish, n.** Intlanzi.
- Fit, a.** Proper, fancie ; suitable, lungile ; in size, lingene.
- Fix, v.i.** Ukuqinisa ; ukumisa.
- Flame, n.** Ilangatye.
- Flat, a.** Cwecwe ; smooth, gudile.
- Flatness, n.** Ubucwecwe.
- Flatter, v.t.** Ukunywceleza.
- Flee, v.i.** Ukusabela ; ukubaleka.
- Fleet, a.** Namendu.
- Flesh, n.** Inyama.
- Fling, v.t.** Ukugibisela, stones ; ukulahla, to throw away.
- Flock, n.** Umhlambi ; *v.i.* ukubuthana ; ukuphelelisa.
- Flog, v.t.** Ukubetha.
- Flour, n.** Umgubo.
- Flourish, v.t.** Ukuhluma ; ukuchuma.
- Flower, n.** Intyantyambo.
- Fly, v., v.i.** Ukuphaphazela, in the air ; ukubhabha, to flutter.
- Fly, n.** Impukane.
- Foal, n.** Inkonyana lehashe.
- Fog, n.** Inkungu.
- Fold, v.t.** Ukusonga.
- Follow, v.t.** Ukulandela ; ukusukela, in pursuit ; ukulandela, on the scent.
- Folly, n.** Ubudenge.
- Food, n.** Ukutya.
- Fool, n.** Igeza.
- Foot, n.** Inyawo, human foot.
- For, n.** Ngenxa, on account of ; ngokuba, because.
- Forage, n.** Ihabile.
- Ford, n.** Izibuko.
- Forehead, n.** Ibunzi.
- Forest, n.** Ihlathi.
- Forget, v.i.** Ukulibala.
- Forgive, v.t.** Ukuxolela.

- Forgiven, *p.* Xolelweyo ; xolelwa.  
 Forgotten, *p.* Lityelwe ; lityelweyo.  
 Form, *v.t.* Ukudala ; ukubumba, from clay.  
 Formerly, *adv.* Kudala.  
 Forsake, *v.t.* Ukulahla ; ukukhalala.  
 Found, *a.* Funyenwe.  
 Foundation, *n.* Isiseko.  
 Fountain, *n.* Umthombo.  
 Fowl, *n.* Inkuku, domestic ; intaka, any wild bird.  
 Fox, *n.* Impungutye.  
 Fragment, *n.* Iqhekeza.  
 Fraud, *n.* Inkohliso.  
 Free, *v.t.* Ukukhulula ; ukuvulela.  
 Free, *a.* Khululekile.  
 Freedom, *n.* Inkululeko.  
 Freely, *adv.* Ngesisa, generously.  
 Frequently, *adv.* Futhi.  
 Friend, *n.* Umhlobo.  
 Fright, *n.* Isithuso.  
 Frighten, *v.t.* Ukothusa ; ukothuka.  
 Frock, *n.* Ingubo ; ilokhwe, dress.  
 Frog, *n.* Isele.  
 From, *prep.* Expressed by locative of noun and the verb ukuvela ; as, ndivela emlanjeni, I come from the river.  
 Frost, *n.* Ingqele.  
 Froth, *n.* Igwebu.  
 Frown, to, *v.t.* With anger, ukujala ; ukufiphala.  
 Frustrate, *v.t.* Ukutshitshisa.  
 Fruit, *n.* Isiqhamo.  
 Fruitful, *adj.* Qhamile ; chumile.  
 Fry, *v.t.* Ukugcada.  
 Full, *adj.* Zele.  
 Fulness, *n.* Ukuzala.  
 Fun, *n.* Intlekisa ; play, indlalo.  
 Fury, *n.* Ukubhabhama ; uburalarume.  
 Furrow, (for water), *n.* Umjelo.  
 Furrows, (wrinkles), *n.* Imisele.  
 Fuss, *n.* Impambano ; iinkcuku.  
 Future, *n.* Ixesha elizayo, *i.e.* ; time which is coming.

## G

- Gabble, *v.i.* Ukubhuda ; ukuve-theza.  
 Gad About, to, *v.i.* Ukutyhutyha.  
 Gadfly, *n.* Isibawu.  
 Gain, *v.t.* Ukuzuza ; ukufuya.  
 Gain, *n.* Inzuzo ; property, imfuyo.  
 Gait, *n.* Ukuhamba.  
 Gall, *n.* Inyongo.  
 Gall, break the skin, *v.i.* Ukutyabula.  
 Gallop, *v.i.* Ukuphala ; ukuphalisa, to cause to gallop.  
 Game, *n.* Umdlalo, play or sport ; iinyamakazi, wild animals.  
 Gaol, *n.* Intolongo.  
 Gaoler, *n.* Umgcini wentolongo.  
 Gap, (opening) *n.* Isithuba.  
 Garden, *n.* Umyezo ; isitiya ; field, intsimi.  
 Garment, *n.* Ingubo.  
 Gash, *v.t.* Ukuqebula.  
 Gasp, *v.ti.* Ukwakhama ; ukuphefumla.  
 Gate, *n.* Isango.  
 Gather, *v.t.* Ukubutha, goods ; ukuhlanganisa, people ; ukufumba, in a heap.

- Gathering, n.** Intlanganiso ;  
imfumba.
- Gay, adj.** Chwayitile.
- Gaze, v.i.** Ukondela.
- Generosity, n.** Isisa.
- Generous, a.** Ngesisa ; nesisa.
- Gentle, ca.** Lulamile.
- Gentleman, n.** Inene ; *pl.* amane-  
nene ; umnumzana.
- Gently, adv.** Kuhle.
- Germ, n.** Isithombo.
- Get, v.t.** Ukufumana ; ukuzuza.
- Ghost, n** Umshologu ; *pl.* imisho-  
logu.
- Giant, n.** Ingxamadolo.
- Gift, n.** Ibhaso, a present ; isipho, a  
favour ; umgido, present of food.
- Gird, v.t.** Ukubopha ; ukubhunqa.
- Girdle, n.** Umbhinqo.
- Girl, n.** Intombazana.
- Give, v.t.** Ukupha ; ukubhasela,  
a gift of something ; ukunika,  
to deliver over ; ukubuyisa, to  
give back.
- Glad, v.i.** Ukuvuya ; with the  
proper pronouns ; I am glad,  
*ndiyavuya* ; we are glad, *siya-  
vuya* ; he is glad, *uyavuya*.
- Gladden, v.t.** Ukuvuyisa.
- Gladness, n.** Uvuyo.
- Gladly, adv.** Ngovuyo.
- Glass, n.** Iglasi, from the English  
looking-glass, isipili.
- Glitter, v.i.** Ukukhazimla.
- Gloom, n.** Isithokothoko.
- Glorify, v.t.** Ukubonga ; ukudu-  
misa ; ukuzukisa.
- Glory, n.** Ubungwalisa ; ubu-  
qaqawuli ; uzuko.
- Go, v.i.** Ukuya ; ukuhamba.  
To go down, ukuhla ;  
to go up, ukunyuka ;  
to go out, ukuphuma ;  
to go in, ukungena ;  
to go home, ukugoduka.  
to go near, ukusondela ;  
to go round, ukujikela ;  
to go before, ukukhokela ;  
to go after, ukulandela.
- Goat, n.** Ibhokhwe.
- God, n.** UThixo.
- Godless, adj.** NgenaThixo.
- Gold, n.** Igolide.
- Good, a.** Lungile, quality, both  
material and moral ; fancle, fit,  
proper ; mnandi, pleasant, profit-  
able, agreeable, sweet.
- Goodness, n.** Ukulunga.
- Goods, n.** Impahla, property  
generally, including live stock.
- Goose, n.** Iranise ; wild goose  
ilowe.
- Gore, v.t.** Ukuhlaba ; *n.* ihlwili.
- Gorge, v.t.** Ukuzingxala.
- Gospel, n.** Ivangeli.
- Govern, v.t.** Ukuphatha ; ukula-  
wula.
- Governor, n.** Umlawuli ; iruluneli
- Government, n.** Ubukhosi ; ula-  
wulo.
- Gown, n.** Ingubo ; ilokhwe.
- Grace, n.** Ufefe ; ubabalo.
- Graciously, adv.** Ngofefe.
- Grain, (of corn) n.** Ukhozo ; *pl.*  
iinkozo.
- Grand, adj.** Nkulu ; noble, beke-  
kile.
- Grandfather, n.** Ubaw'omkhulu,  
my grandfather.  
Your grandfather, uyihl'omkhulu.  
His grandfather, uyise omkhulu.

- Grandmother, n.** Umakhulu, my grandmother.  
Your grandmother, unyokokhulu.  
His grandmother, uninakhulu.
- Grant, v.t.** Ukuvuma; ukunika.
- Grape, n.** Idiliya.
- Grape, vine, n.** Umdiliya.
- Grapple, v.t.** Ukubamba; ukoyisa.
- Grass, n.** Ingca, general word: couch grass, utyani; long grass in seed, isikhotha.
- Grasshopper, n.** Umqhathu; pl. imiqhathu; iboni; pl. amaboni.
- Gratitude, n.** Umbulelo.
- Grave, n.** Ingcwaba.
- Gravel, n.** Uhlalutye.
- Gravy, n.** Umhluzi.
- Grease, v.t.** Ukuthambisa; ukusinda ngamafutha.
- Great, adj.** Nkulu, in bulk; nizi, in number.
- Greatness, n.** Ubukhulu.
- Greediness, n.** Ukubawa.
- Greedily, adv.** Ngokubawa.
- Greedy, to be, v.i.** Ukubawa.
- Green, adj.** Luhlaza; not ripe, or not cooked, krwada.
- Greet, v.t.** Ukubulisa.
- Grey, adj.** Ngwevu, with prefix varying with the class of the noun.
- Grief, n.** Usizi, imbandezelo.
- Grieve, to, v.i.** Ukubethwa lusi-zi; v.t. ukudanisa.
- Grievance, n.** Isikhalazo; inkathazo.
- Grind, v.t.** Ukusila; ukulola, to sharpen.
- Grindstone, n.** Iitye lokulola.
- Gripe, to, v.t.** Ukuluma isisu.
- Groan, n., v.i.** Ukugula; ukuncwina.
- Groan, n.** Isigulo; umncwino.
- Ground, n.** Umhlaba.
- Grope, v.i.** Ukuphuthaphutha.
- Grow, v.i.** Ukuhluma; ukumila; ukuchuma.
- Growl, v.i.** Ukuvungama.
- Grown, adj.** Khulile; chumile.
- Grub, n.** Isihlava.
- Grudge, v.i.** Ukuvimba; ukuzonda.
- Grudge, n.** Inzondo; umona.
- Gruel, n.** Isidudu.
- Grumble, to, v.i.** Ukukrokra; ukukhala.
- Guard, v.t.** Ukulinda; ukunqabisa.
- Guess, v.i.** Ukuzindla; ukuqasha.
- Guide, v.t.** Ukwalathisa; ukukhaphela.
- Guide, n.** Umkhokeli.
- Guilt, n.** Ityala.
- Guinea fowl, n.** Impangele.
- Gulf, n.** Umngxuma, a pit.
- Gum, from the mimosa, n.** Intlaka.
- Gun, n.** Umpu.
- Gunpowder, n.** Iiluluwa.
- Gush, v.i.** Ukumpompoza.
- Gut, n.** Ithumbu.
- Gutter, n.** Umsele wamanzi.

## H

- H. The letter H is aspirated in Xhosa.
- Habit, *n.* Isiko ; umkhwa.
- Habitation, *n.* House, indlu ; home, ikhaya.
- Habitually, *adv.* Futhi.
- Hailstones, *n.* Amatye esichotho ; *v.i.* ukuna isichotho.
- Hail, to, *v.t.* Call, Ukubiza, *v.i.* ukumemeza.
- Hair, *n.* Iinwele ; uboya, of animals.
- Half, *n.* Isiqingatha.
- Halo, round the sun or moon, *n.* Isangqa.
- Hallo ! *interjec.* Hina ; shehe ! Hina wena, hallo you !
- Halt, *v.t.* Ukulalisa, to stop ; *v.i.* ukuqhwalala, to limp.
- Halve, *v.t.* Ukwahlula kubini.
- Hammer, *n.* Isando ; *v.t.* ukubetha ; ukukhanda.
- Hand, *n.* Isandla ; isandla sokunene, right hand ; isandla sekholo, left hand *v.t.* ; ukunikela, to hand or give.
- Handle, *n.* Umphini ; umphambo of a pot, etc.
- Handle, to, *v.t.* Ukucofa, to feel ; ukuphatha, to manage.
- Hang, *v.i.* Ukuxhoma ; *v.i.* ukulengalenga.
- Hap, occurrence, *n.* Ibhako.
- Happen, *v.i.* Ukuhla.
- Happiness, *n.* Ubuyolo.
- Happy, *adj.* Yonwabile.
- Hard, *adv.* Lukhuni, in a material and moral sense ; nqabile, difficult.
- Harden, *v.t.* Ukwenza lukhuni.
- Hardness, *n.* Ubukhuni.
- Hardy, strong, *adj.* Omelele.
- Hare, *n.* Umvundla.
- Harm, *v.t.* Ukulimaza, material injury ; ukona, moral.
- Harness, *n.* Ihanesi.
- Harrow, *n.* Iere ; umqwakanisi ; *v.t.* ukuqwakanisa.
- Harvest, *n.* Ukwindla ; ixesha lokuvuna.
- Harvest, to, *v.t.* Ukuvuna.
- Hash, (food), *n.* Umhluzi ; *v.t.* ukunqwema, to cut meat.
- Haste, *n.* Ubungxamo.
- Hasten, *v.t.* Ukungxamisa ; uku-khawuleza.
- Hastily, *adv.* Ngobungxamo.
- Hasty, *adj.* Ngxamile.
- Hat, *n.* Umnqwazi.
- Hate, *v.t.* Ukuthiya ; ukuzonda.
- Hatred, *n.* Intiyo ; inzondo.
- Haughtiness, *n.* Ikratshi.
- Haughtily, *adv.* Ngekratshi.
- Haughty, *adj.* Nekratshi.
- Haul, *v.t.* Ukutsala ; ukurola.
- Have, *v.t.* By the verb *ukuba*, with noun or pronoun following and particle *na*, *ne*, or *no*, meaning to be with : as, I have a horse, *Ndinehashe*.  
You have a house, *unendlu*.
- Hawk, *n.* Ukhozi.
- He, *pron.* Yena ; with verbs, the *u*, pronoun prefix, *uyathetha*, he is speaking. With the present participle *e* is used, as *ehamba ke*, walking ; he has a dog, *unenja*.
- Head, *n.* Intloko.

- Headache**, *n.* By idiom ; I have a head, *Ndinentloko*.
- Heal**, *v.t.* Ukuphilisa.
- Health**, *n.* Impilo.
- Healthy**, *adj.* Philile.
- Heap**, *v.t.* Ukufumba ; *n.* imfumba.
- Hear**, *v.t.* Ukuva.
- Heart**, *n.* Intliziyo ; of an animal, iphaphu.
- Hearth**, *n.* Iziko.
- Heat**, *n.* Ubushushu ; *v.t.* ukufudumeza, to make warm ; *v.i.* ukufudumala, to feel warm.
- Heaven**, *n.* Izulu ; isibhakabhaka. sky.
- Heaviness**, *n.* Ubunzima.
- Heavy**, *adj.* Nzima.
- Hedge**, *n.* Uthango.
- Heed**, to take, *v.i.* Ukulumka.
- Heel**, *n.* Isithende.
- Heifer**, *n.* Ithokazi.
- Height**, *n.* Ubude ; ukuphakama.
- Heir**, *n.* Indlalifa.
- Hell**, *n.* Isihoko somlilo.
- Help**, *n.* Uncedo.
- Help**, *v.t.* Ukunceda ; ukusiza ; ukwenzisa.
- Helper**, *n.* Umncedi.
- Hemp**, *n.* Umya, wild hemp.
- Hem**, to, *v.t.* Ukuqukumbela ; ukuphetha.
- Hen**, *n.* Inkukukazi, also Isikhukukazi.
- Her**, *pron.* Yena ; or yona, if referring to a noun of the third class ; as *intombi*, a girl, or *m* or *yi* inserted in the verb as the objective.
- Herd**, *n.* Umhlambi ; weenkomo, of cattle ; weehangu, of pigs.
- Herdsmen**, *n.* Umalusi weenkomo.
- Here**, *adv.* Apha.
- Hereabouts**, *adv.* Mayel'apha
- Hereby**, *adv.* Ngako oko.
- Hers**, *poss. pron.* Wakhe, akhe, lakhe, sakhe, etc., according to the class of noun.
- Herself**, *pron.* Isiqu sakhe.
- Hesitate**, *v.i.* Ukuthandabuza.
- Hesitation**, *n.* Intandabuzo.
- Hew**, *v.t.* Ukugawula ; ukubaza, to sharpen.
- Hiccough**, *n.* Ukukhutywa ; ithwabe.
- Hide**, *v.t.* Ukufihla ; ukuzimela, to help oneself.
- Hidden**, *p.p.* Fihlekile.
- Hiding-place**, *n.* Indawo yokufihla ; indawo yokuzimela.
- High**, *adj.* Phakamile.
- Hill**, *n.* Induli.
- Hillock**, *n.* Indulana.
- Him**, *pron.* Yena, with a noun of the 1st class, as *umntu*, a man ; *yona*, with a noun of the 2nd class, as *inkwenkwe*, a boy.
- Himself**, *pron.* Isiqu sakhe, with a noun of the 1st class ; *isiqu sayo*, with a noun of the 2nd class.
- Hinder**, *v.t.* Ukuthintela ; ukubandeza ; ukulibazisa.
- Hip**, *n.* Inyonga.
- Hippopotamus**, *n.* Imvubu.
- Hire**, *v.t.* Ukuqesha.
- His**, *pron.* Akhe, wakhe, yakhe, sakhe, etc., according to the class of noun.
- Hiss**, *v.i.* Ukufutha.
- Hit**, *v.t.* Ukubetha, to beat ; ukuchana, to hit the mark.
- Hoard**, *v.t.* Ukufuya ; ukuqweba.



- Hoe, *n.* Igaba.  
Hoe, to, *v.t.* Ukuhlakula.  
Hog, *n.* Ihangu.  
Hoist, *v.t.* Ukuphakamisa.  
Hold, *v.t.* Ukubamba.  
Hole, *n.* Umngxuma.  
Holiness, *n.* Ubungwele.  
Holy, *adj.* Ngcwele.  
Home, *n.* Ikhaya.  
Honey, *n.* Ubusi.  
Honey-bee, *n.* Inyosi.  
Honey-bird, *n.* Intak' obusi.  
Honour, *n.* Imbeko ; nodumo ;  
*v.t.* ukubeka.  
Hoof, *n.* Uphuphu ; inqina, cloven.  
Hook, *n.* Igwegwe.  
Hope, *n.* Ithemba.  
Hope, to, *v.i.* Ukuthemba.  
Hopefully, *adv.* Ngethemba.  
Horn, *n.* Uphondo ; isigodlo, when  
cut off.  
Hornbill, *n.* Umkholwane.  
Horrible, *n.* Yoyikekayo.  
Horribly, *adv.* Ngokoyikekayo.  
Hornet, *n.* Unomanxedlana.  
Horse, *n.* Ihashe.  
Hospitality, *n.* Isisa.  
Host, *n.* Umkhosi, an army  
ibandla, a multitude.  
Hot, *adj.* Shushu.  
Hotness, *n.* Ubushushu.  
Hottentot, *n.* Ilawu.  
Hour, *n.* Ixeshana ; iyure.  
House, *n.* Indlu.  
Household, *n.* Abantu bendlu.  
How, *adv.* Ngani na ; njani na.  
How are you ? Unjani na ?  
How is it that ? Yini na ukuba ?  
How much ? Kangakanani na ?  
How high is it ? Iphakame ka-  
ngakanani na ?  
How far is it ? Kukude kanga-  
kanani na ?  
However, *adv.* Noko.  
Howl, *v.i.* Ukulila ; *n.* isililo.  
Huge, *adj.* Nkulukazi.  
Humanity, *n.* Uluntu ; isintu.  
Humane, *adj.* Nobubele.  
Humanely, *adv.* Ngobubele.  
Humble, *v.t.* Ukugobisa ; *v.i.* uku-  
thobeka.  
Hunger, *n.* Indlala.  
Hungry, *adj.* Lambile.  
Hunt, *v.t.* Ukuzingela.  
Hunter, *n.* Umzingeli.  
Hurricane, *n.* Uqhwithela.  
Hurriedly, *adv.* Ngobungxamo ;  
ngokukhawuleza.  
Hurry, *v.t.* Ukungxamisa ; *v.t.*  
ukungxama.  
Hurt, to, *v.t.* Ukwenzakalisa.  
Hurt, *adj.* Wenzakele.  
Husband, *n.* Indoda.  
Hush, *v.t.* Tutu.  
Husk, *n.* Ikhasi, of maize covering.  
Hut, *n.* Indlu ; inqgwala.  
Hyena, *n.* Ingcuka.  
Hymn, *n.* Iculo.

## I

- I**, *pron.* Mina ; mna ; when used as the prefix to the verb, *ndi* ; as, *ndithetha*, I speak.
- Ice**, *n.* Umkhence.
- Idea**, *n.* Ingcamango ; recollection, inkumbulo.
- Idiot**, *n.* Igeza ; isidenge.
- Idle**, to be, *v.i.* Ukunqena.
- Idle**, *adj.* Nqenayo.
- Idleness**, *n.* Ubunqenera.
- Idle person**, *n.* Ubunqenera.
- If**, *conj.* Ukuba : as, ukuba ndiyahamba, if I go.
- Ignorance**, *n.* Ubudenge ; ukungakwazi.
- Ignorant**, *adj.* Ngenakwazi ; isidenge.
- Ill**, (*evil*), *adj.* Mbi ; khohlakele.
- Ill**, to be, or out of health, *v.t.* Ukufa umntu ofayo, a sick man.
- Illness**, *n.* Isifo ; umkhuhlane.
- Image**, *n.* Umfanekiso.
- Imagine**, *v.t.* Ukuzindla ; ukucamanga.
- Imitate**, *v.t.* Ukulinganisa ; ukwenzisa ; ukuxelisa.
- Immediate**, *adj.* Ngoku.
- Immediately**, *adv.* Kwanguku.
- Immense**, *adj.* Nkulukazi.
- Immerse**, *v.t.* Ukuntywilisa ; ukutshonisa emanzini.
- Immodest**, *adj.* Sile.
- Immoral**, *adj.* Khohlakeleyo.
- Immortal**, *adj.* Ongunaphakade ; ngafiyi.
- Immovable**, *adj.* Qinile.
- Immutable**, *adj.* Ngenakushukunyiswa.
- Impatience**, *n.* Ubungxamo.
- Impatient**, *adj.* Ngxamile.
- Impel**, *v.t.* Ukuqhuba ; ukunya-nzela.
- Imperfect**, *adj.* Phuthile.
- Impertinence**, *n.* Ukusa.
- Impertinent**, *adj.* Sile.
- Impetuous**, *adj.* Ngxamile kakhulu.
- Impetuosity**, *n.* Ubungxamo obukhulu.
- Impose**, *v.t.* Ukukhohlisa.
- Imposition**, *n.* Inkohliso, intshinizo.
- Impossible**, *adj.* Nqabile, difficult ; okungenakwenzeka ; that cannot be done.
- Impostor**, *n.* Umkhohlisi.
- Implore**, *v.t.* Ukukhunga ; ukutaruzisa.
- Improve**, *v.t.* Ukulungisa.
- Impudent**, *adj.* Sile.
- In**, *prep.* Is expressed :
1. By the locative of the noun ; *endlwini*, in the house ; *ebuhlanti*, in the kraal.
  2. By *phakathi* ; as *phakathi kwendlu*, in the house.
  3. By *nga*, *nge*, *ngo*, before the noun following, as *ngalo mnyaka*, in that year ; *ngagama*, in the name of ; *ngokuhlwa*, in the evening.
- Inability**, *n.* Ukuswela amandla.
- Inaccurate**, *adj.* Phosisekileyo ; possible.
- Incessant**, *adj.* Ngenakupheza.
- Incessantly**, *adv.* Ngokungena kupheza.
- Incline**, *v.t.* Ukuthobela ; ukutyekela ; ukutsalela, to draw.

- Inclose**, *v.t.* Ukubiya, with a fence ; ukufaka, to put in.
- Increase**, *v.i.* Ukwanda ; *v.t.* ukwandisa.
- Incur**, *v.i.* Ukuzeka, to become liable.
- Indecision**, *n.* Ukuthandabuza ; ukuqhoqhonya.
- Indifference**, *n.* Ukungabinakukhathala.
- Indifferent, to be**, *v.t.* Ukungakhathali ; ukuba sesithubeni.
- Indignation**, *n.* Ingqumbo.
- Indolence**, *n.* Ukunqena ; ukucubhuka.
- Indolent**, *adj.* Nqenayo ; enqenile.
- Industrious**, *adj.* Khuthele.
- Industry**, *n.* Inkuthalo.
- Industriously**, *adv.* Ngokukhuthala.
- Ineffective**, *adj.* Phuthile.
- Infamy**, *n.* Ihlazo.
- Infancy**, *n.* Ubusana.
- Infant**, *n.* Usana.
- Infantile**, *adj.* Ngobusana.
- Infection**, *n.* Ukusulelwa.
- Infinite**, *adj.* Ngenakubalwa.
- Infirm**, *adj.* Buthathaka.
- Infirmity**, *n.* Ubuthathaka.
- Inform**, *v.t.* Generally ukuxelela, ukwazisa ; to report formally, ukubika ; to report privately, ukuncetheza.
- Inhabit**, *v.t.* Ukuhlala ; ukuma.
- Inhabitants**, *n.* Abemi.
- Inherit**, *v.i.* Ukudla ilifa.
- Inheritance**, *n.* Ilifa.
- Inheritor**, *n.* Indlalifa.
- Iniquity**, *n.* Isono ; isigqitho ; ubugwenxa.
- Injure**, *v.t.* Ukulimaza.
- Ink**, *n.* Umsizi.
- Innocence**, *n.* Ukungabi natyala ; ukuba msulwa.
- Innumerable**, *adj.* Okungenakubalwa ; ngenakubalwa.
- Inoculate**, *v.t.* Ukuqaphula.
- Inquire**, *v.i.* Ukubuza ; ukuphendla umbuzo.
- Inquiry**, *n.* Umbuzo.
- Insanity**, *n.* Ugezo ; igeza ; a mad man, umntu onogezo.
- Insect**, *n.* Isilwana ; inunu.
- Inside**, *adv.* Ngaphakathi, phakathi.
- Inspect**, *v.t.* Ukuqondela ; ukuphendula.
- Instantly**, *adv.* Kwangoku.
- Instantaneously**, *adv.* Ngokwalamala.
- Instruct**, *v.t.* Ukufundisa.
- Instruction**, *n.* Imfundiso.
- Instructor**, *n.* Umfundisi.
- Intelligence**, *n.* Ukwazi.
- Intellect**, *n.* Ingqondo.
- Intemperance**, *n.* Ukunxila, in drinking ; ubushushu, in conduct.
- Intend**, *v.t.* Ukucinga ; or ukunganga, with the verb required.
- Intentionally**, *adv.* Ngabom.
- Intercede**, *v.i.* Ukuthethelela ; ukuthandazela.
- Intercession**, *n.* Isicamagushelo.
- Intercessor**, *n.* Umthetheleli.
- Intercept**, *v.t.* Ukubamba ; ukuthintela.
- Intercourse**, *n.* Ukuncokola.
- Internal**, *adv.* Phakathi.
- Interpose**, *v.t.* Ukulamla.
- Interpret**, *v.t.* Ukukhumsha.
- Interpreter**, *n.* Ikhumsha.
- Interrogate**, *v.t.* Ukubuza.

**Interrupt, v.t.** Ukuphazamisa ;  
ukubandeza.

**Intestines, n.** Amathumbu.

**Intimacy, n.** Ubukholwane.

**Intimate, v.t.** Ukoyikisa.

**Intoxicate, v.t.** Ukunxilisa.

**Introduce, v.t.** Ukungenisa ; to  
introduce one person to another,  
ukwazisa.

**Invisible, a.** Ngenakubonwa.

**Invite, v.t.** Ukumema.

**Inward, adj.** Phakathi.

**Iron, n.** Intsinbi ; izinyithi, in  
bars.

**Irrigate, v.t.** Ukunkcenkcesha.

**Is, v.i.** The substantive verb in  
English is expressed in Xhosa in  
several ways. 1. *Before adjectives*  
certain particles corre-  
sponding to the class of noun  
are used. These are *u, li, i, si,*  
etc., thus :

CLASS.

- I. The man is dead,  
Umntu ufile.
- II. The horse is dead.  
Ihashe lifile.
- III. The bag is empty,  
Ingxowa ize

IV The basket is full,  
Isitya sizele.

V. The child is hungry,  
Usana lulambile.

VI. The river is deep.  
Umlambo unzulu.

CLASS.

VII. The pain is sharp,  
Ubuhlungu bubukhali.

VIII. The food is cooked.  
Ukutya kuphekiwe.

2. *As part of the verb*, in the pre-  
sent tense, Indicative mood,  
is, is expressed by the form  
used for the tense, *uya* or *u,*  
as :

He *is* walking, *Uyahamba.*

He *is* speaking, *Uyathetha.*

3. *In an impersonal form*, by the  
participle *ku*, before the  
adjective, as, *it is* good, *ku-*  
*lungile* ; *it is* pleasant, *ku-*  
*mmandi.*

**Island, n.** Isiqithi.

**It, pron.** Lona, yona, sona, wona,  
bona, kona, according to the class  
of noun to which the pronoun  
refers. As a pronoun verbal  
prefix, *Li, yi, si, lu, bu, ku*

J

**Jackal, n.** Impungutye.

**Jackass, n.** Iyesile ; inkunzi ye-  
yesile.

**Jackdaw, or crow, n.** Unomyayi.

**Jar, v.t.** Ukushukumisa, to shake ;  
ukuphika, to disagree.

**Jaw, n.** Umhlathi.

**Jealous, adj.** Nobukhwele.

**Jealousy, n.** Ubukhwele ; umona  
envy.

**Jeer, v.t.** Ukuhlelisa.

**Jest, v.i.** Ukuncokola.

**Jingle, v.i.** Ukukhenkceza.

**Join, v.t.** Ukuhlanganisa.

- Joint of a limb, *n.* Ilungu.  
 Join, to, *v.t.* Ukuhlomla, of things only.  
 Journey, *n.* Uhambo.  
 Journey, to make a, *v.t.* Ukuhamba.  
 Joy, *n.* Uvuyo; *v.i.* ukuvuya; ukuvuyisa, to cause joy.  
 Joyfully, *adv.* Ngovuyo.  
 Judge, *n.* Umgwebi.  
 Judgment, *n.* Isigwebo.  
 Jumble, *v.t.* Ukudibanisa, to mix.  
 Jump, *v.i.* Ukutsiba; ukuxhuma, in dancing.  
 Just, (true, right), *adj.* Lungile, nyanisekile; fanele, proper, fit.  
 Just, as if. Njengokungathi.

## K

- Kafir, *n.* UmXhosa.  
 Kafir language, the, *n.* Intetho yesiXhosa.  
 Kafir corn, *n.* Amazimba.  
 Kafir, country in the, EmaXhoseni.  
 Keep, *v.t.* Ukugcina; ukubamba.  
 Keeper, *n.* Umgcini.  
 Kettle, *n.* Iketile.  
 Key, *n.* Isitshixo.  
 Kick, *n.* Ukukhaba.  
 Kid, *n.* Itakane lebhokhwe.  
 Kidney, *n.* Intso.  
 Kill, *v.t.* Ukubulala; ukuxhela, animals for food.  
 Kind, *adj.* Nobubele; nofefe.  
 Kind, sort, or class, *n.* Uhlobo; uhlobo lwabantu, kind or race of men.  
 Kindle, *v.t.* Ukuphemba, a fire; ukuvusa imfazwe, a strife.  
 Kindly, *adv.* Ngobubele.  
 Kindness, *n.* Ububele.  
 Kindred, *n.* Abazalwana.  
 King, *n.* Ukumkani.  
 Kingdom, *n.* Ubukumkani.  
 Kiss, *v.t.* Ukwanga.  
 Kite, (a bird), *n.* Ukhozi.  
 Knead, *v.t.* Ukuxovula.  
 Knee, *n.* Idolo.  
 Kneel, *v.i.* Ukuguqa.  
 Knife, *n.* Isitshetshe; imela.  
 Knob, of a stick *n.* Isikhanda; a protuberance, iqhubu.  
 Knock, *v.t.* Ukunqonqoza.  
 Knock down, to, Ukuwisa.  
 Knot, *n.* Iqhina.  
 Knotty, *adj.* Namaqhina.  
 Know, *v.t.* Ukwazi.  
 Knowledge, *n.* Ukwazi; ulwazi.  
 Knuckle, *n.* Ilungu lomnwe.  
 Kraal, *n.* Umzi, village; ubuhlanti, for cattle; isibaya, for sheep or small stock.

## L

- Labour, n.** Umsebenzi ; pl. imi.  
**Labour, to, v.t.** Ukusebenza ; ukuzama.  
**Labourer, n.** Umsebenzi ; pl. aba.  
**Lack, n.** Ukuswela ; *v.i.* ukuswela.  
**Lad, n.** Inkwenkwe ; umfana.  
**Ladle, n.** Icepho.  
**Lady, n.** Inkosikazi ; inenekazi.  
**Lag, v.i.** Ukulibala.  
**Lake, n.** Ichibi ; ichweba.  
**Lamb, n.** Itakane legusha.  
**Lame, adj.** Jiyile ; qhwalelayo.  
**Lame, to, v.t.** Ukuqhwalelisa ; ukujiya, to be lame.  
**Lameness, n.** Ukujiya.  
**Lament, v.i.** Ukulilela.  
**Lamentation, n.** Isililo.  
**Lamp, n.** Isikhanyiso ; isibane, a candle.  
**Lance, n.** Isikhali ; umkhonto, an assegai ; *v.t.* ukutyanda, to cut.  
**Land, n.** Umhlaba, ground ; ilizwe, country ; amasimi, cultivated lands.  
**Language, n.** Intetho ; isithetho.  
**Lantern, n.** Isibane.  
**Lap, v.i.** Ukuxhapha, as a dog.  
**Large, adj.** Nkulu.  
**Largeness, n.** Ubukhulu.  
**Lark, n.** Igwanqa, a bird ; imfeke-tho, play.  
**Lash, v.t.** Ukubetha ngeziniya.  
**Lass, n.** Intombi ; intombazana.  
**Last, a.** Ngasemva ; gqibela.  
 The prefix varies with the  
 The prefix varies with the noun.  
 The last man, *umntu ongasemva*  
 kwabanye. 'The last day of the week, *umhla wokugqibela*.  
**Late, adj.** Kade ; mva.  
**Lately, adv.** Kutsha nje ; kwixesha eligqithileyo.  
**Laugh, v.i. and n.** Ukuhleka.  
**Lavish, v.t.** Ukuchithachitha.  
**Law, n.** Umthetho ; isiko, custom.  
**Lawless, adj.** Ngenamthetho.  
**Lawlessness, n.** Ukungabi namthetho ; ukuswela umthetho.  
**Law suit, n.** Ityala.  
**Lay, v.t.** Ukulalisa ;  
 To lay in order, ukuhlela ;  
 to lay by wealth, ukufuya ;  
 ukuqweba.  
 to lay snares, ukuthiya ;  
 to lay hold, ukubamba ;  
 to lay claim, ukubanga into ;  
 to lay down, to place, ukubeka.  
**Lazy, adj.** Nqenayo ; dangele.  
**Lazily, adv.** Ngokunqena.  
**Laziness, n.** Ukunqena ; ukudangala ; ubuvila.  
**Lead, v.t.** Ukukhokela.  
 To guide ukululeka ;  
 to conduct, ukuphatha ; ukuhambisa.  
 to lead astray, ukulahlekisa.  
**Leader, n.** Umkhokeli.  
**Leaf, n.** Igqabi, of a tree ; iimbe-ngu of maize.  
**Leaf, v.i.** Ukuvuza.  
**Lean, adj.** Nqinile ; bhityile ; *v.i.* ukwayama ; ukuthambeka.  
**Leanness, n.** Ukubhitya ; ukunqina.  
**Leap, v.i.** Ukutsiba.

- Learn, v.i.** Ukufunda.  
**Learner, n.** Umfundi.  
**Leave, v.i.** Ukushiya.  
**Leave off, v.i.** Ukuyeka; ukupheza.  
**Leave, to a place.** Ukunduluka, ukumka; ukushiya, to leave behind.  
**Leaven, n.** Igwele.  
**Leavings, n.** Intsalela.  
**Left hand side, adj.** Ekhohlo; Indlela yasekhohlo, road to the left.  
**Leg, n.** Umlenze.  
**Leisure, n.** Ithuba; ixesha.  
**Lend, v.t.** Ukuboleka, with the accusative of the noun.  
**Length, n.** Ubude.  
**Lengthen, v.t.** Ukolula, by stretching; ukuhlomela, by adding.  
**Leopard, n.** Ingwe; ihlosi.  
**Leper, n.** Oneqhenqa.  
**Leprosy, n.** Iqhenqa.  
**Lessen, v.t.** Ukunciphisa.  
**Less, adj.** Ngaphantsi; ncinane.  
**Lesson, n.** Isifundo; imfundo.  
**Lest, conj.** Hleze.  
**Let, allow, v.t.** Ukuvumela.  
**Let go, v.t.** Ukukhulula.  
**Let alone, v.t.** Ukuyeka.  
**Let, (hire), v.t.** Ukuqesha.  
**Letter, n.** Incwadi, a written letter or book; igama, of the alphabet.  
**Liar, n.** Ixoki.  
**Liberality, n.** Isisa; ngesisa; liberally.  
**Liberate, v.t.** Ukukhulula; ukuhlangula.  
**Liberty, n.** Inkululeko; ukukhululeka, to be liberated.  
**Lick, v.** Ukukhotha.  
**Lid, n.** Isiciko.  
**Lie, v.t.** Ukuxoka; to lie down, ukulala; to lie down in wait, ukulalela.  
**Life, n.** Ubomi; ubomi obungunaphakade, eternal life.  
**Lift, v.t.** Ukuphakamisa.  
**Light, n.** Ukukhanya; ubumhlophe; v.t. ukukhanyisa.  
**Light, in weight, adj.** Lula, kaphukhaphu; in colour, mhlophe.  
**Light a fire, to, v.t.** Ukuphamba.  
**Light upon, to, v.t.** Ukuhla.  
**Lightness, n.** Ubulula.  
**Like to, v.i.** Ukuthanda; adj. fana; njenga, according to the class of noun.  
**Liken, v.i.** Ukufanisa.  
**Likeness, n.** Ukufana.  
**Likewise, adv.** Njalo; kanjalo; ngokunjalo.  
**Lily, n.** Inyibiba.  
**Limb, n.** Ilungu, of the body; isebe, of a tree.  
**Lime, n.** Ikalika.  
**Limit, n.** Umda.  
**Limp, v.i.** Ukujiya.  
**Line, a mark, n.** Uingca; umda, a boundary; intambo, a string.  
**Linger, v.i.** Ukulibala; ukuzilazila.  
**Linen, n.** Ileni; ileneni.  
**Link, to, v.t.** Ukukhonkxa.  
**Lion, n.** Ingonyama.  
**Lip, n.** Umlomo, the mouth; ubhovu, upper lip.  
**Listen, v.t.** Ukuphulaphula; ukuva.

- Litter**, *n.* Ithala ; ukhuko, stretcher amathole ; the young of animals ; inkunkuma, rubbish.
- Little**, *adj.* Ncinane or kancinane ; *n.* intwana, a small portion.
- Live to**, *v.i.* Ukudla ubomi ; ukuhlala, to stay in a place ; ukuphila, to be well.
- Liver**, *n.* Isibindi.
- Lizard**, *n.* Icilitshe.
- Load**, *v.t.* Ukuthwalisa, with a burden ; *n.* Iflara, load of a waggon ; umthwalo, a burden.
- Loaf**, *n.* Isonka.
- Locality**, *n.* Indawo.
- Lock**, *v.t.* Ukutshixa ; ukutshixela, to lock up.
- Lock**, *n.* Iqhaga.
- Locust**, *n.* Inkumbi.
- Locustbird**, *n.* Ingwamza ; unowanga.
- Lodge**, *v.i.* Ukulalisa.
- Lodger**, *n.* Undwendwe, a stranger.
- Loins**, *n.* Amanqe.
- Loiter**, *v.i.* Ukulibala ; ukuhiliza.
- Lone**, *lonely*, *adj.* Odwa, with prefix varying according to the class of noun, or the pronoun, *Indlu eyodwa*, a lone house ; *umfazi oyedwa*, a lonely woman.
- Long**, *adj.* De ; kade ; *umgama okude* ; a long distance ; *kudala*, a long time ago.
- Long for**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukukhanuka ; ukulangazelela ; ukukhumbula.
- Look**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukukhangela.  
To look about, ukubhekabheka ; to look intently, ukuqolozela ; ukujonga.  
to look about, ukubheka.
- Look**, *interjec.* Khangela ; khangela apha, look here.
- Loosen**, *v.t.* Ukukhulula ; ukuthukulula ; ukucombulula.
- Lord**, *n.* Inkosi.
- Lose**, *v.i.* Ukulahla ; ukulahleka, to be lost.
- Loss**, *n.* Ilahleko.
- Lost**, *adj.* Lahlekile.
- Loud**, noise *n.* Ingxokozelo, of voices ; intlokoma, generally.
- Loud voice**, Ilizwi elikhulu.
- Loud call**, Isimemezo esikhulu.
- Loud cry**. Isikhalo esikhulu.
- Love**, *v.t.* Ukuthanda.
- Love**, *n.* Uthando.
- Lovingly**, *adv.* Ngokuthanda ; ngothando.
- Low**, *adj.* Phantsi.
- Low**, *v.i.* Ukukhala, as cattle.
- Lower**, *v.t.* Ukuhlisa.
- Lowness**, *n.* Ubuphantsi.
- Lowliness**, *n.* Ukuthobeka.
- Lot**, *n.* Iqashiso.
- Lubricate**, *v.t.* Ukuthambisa ngeoli.
- Luck**, good, *n.* Ithamsanqa ; ilishwa, bad luck, misfortune.
- Lukewarm**, *adj.* Dikidiki.
- Lull**, *v.t.* To lull to sleep, ukulalisa ; to calm, ukuzolisa.
- Lump**, *n.* Iqhubu, in flesh ; igada of earth ; isiqa, of meat, etc.
- Lunacy**, *n.* Disease of lunacy, ugezo ; folly, ubugeza ; a lunatic, igeza.
- Lungs**, *n.* Imiphunga.
- Lung-sickness**, *n.* Imofu.
- Lying down**, *p.p.* Lele ; lying deceiving, xoka.
- Lying in wait**. Ukulalela.



## M

M is the objective to the third person singular first class—inserted before the root of the verb—as *ndiya-m-betha*, I beat him.

**Mad**, *adj.* Geza.

**Madness**, *n.* Ubugeza, folly ; ugezo, lunacy.

**Made**, *adj.* Yenziwe.

**Madman**, *n.* Indoda eligeza.

**Maggot**, *n.* Impethu.

**Magistrate**, *n.* Imantyi.

**Maid**, *n.* Intombi.

**Maid-servant**, *n.* Isicakakazi.

**Maize**, *n.* Umbona.

*Umbona omtsha*, green maize.

*Iqhashu*, maize in cobs just ripening

*Igrenyeza*, soft green maize.

*Iinkobe*, cooked maize.

*Ummgusho*, stamped maize.

*Umgrayo*, crushed maize.

**Make**, *to, v.t.* Ukwenza.

*Ukudala*, to create.

*Ukunyanzela*, to compel.

**Malady**, *n.* Isifo.

**Maker**, *n.* Umenzi.

**Male**, *n.* Indoda, a man ; inkwenkwe, a boy ; inkunzi, of animals.

**Malice**, *n.* Inzondo ; ukuthiya.

**Malicious**, *adj.* Nenzondo.

**Maliciously**, *adv.* Ngenzondo.

**Malign**, *v.t.* Ukuhleba ; ukunyelisa.

**Man**, *n.* Indoda ; indodana or umfana, a young man ; ixhego, old man.

**Manage**, *v.t.* Ukuphatha.

**Mane**, *n.* Isinci.

**Manage**, *n.* Ukhwekhwe, of dogs ; Ibhula, scab ; injinana, itch.

**Manhood**, *n.* Ubudoda.

**Manly**, *adj.* Ngobudoda.

**Manifest**, *adj.* Bonakala.

**Manifest**, *to, v.t.* Ukubonisa ; ukutyhila ; ukubonakalisa.

**Manner**, *n.* Isiko ; umkhwa ; isimilo, personal conduct.

**Manure**, *n.* Umgquba.

**Many**, *adj.* Ninzi.

**Mar**, *v.t.* Ukona ; ukonakalisa, to spoil.

**Mare**, *n.* Ihashekazi.

**Mark**, *v.t.* Ukuphawula ; ukubalula, to notice.

**Mark**, *n.* Uphawu.

**Marriage**, *n.* Umtshato, ukwendisa, to give in marriage.

**Marrow**, *n.* Umongo.

**Marry**, *v.t.* Ukutshata ; generally ; ukuzeka, as applied to a man ; ukwenda, as applied to a woman.

**Marry**, *v.t.* Ukutshatisa, performance of ceremony.

**Marsh**, *n.* Umgxobhozo.

**Mass**, *n.* Imfidi, of dead matter ; inkithankitha, of living beings.

**Master**, *n.* Inkosi ; baas, from the Dutch.

**Mat**, *n.* Ukhuko, for sleeping ; isigcobo ; isithebe.

**Matter**, *n.* Umcimbi, of business ; ububovu, pus.

**Mature**, *adj.* Ripe, vuthiwe ; complete, fezekile, zalisekile.

**Maul**, *v.t.* Ukubetha kakubi.

**Me**, *pron.* Mina or mna. But used in the objective case *ndi* : as, why do you beat me, kungani na ukuba undibethe.

- Meal, *n.* Umgubo.
- Meaning, *n.* Intsingiselo ; umgqaliselo.
- Measure, *v.t.* Ukulipganisa.
- Measure, *n.* Umlinganiso.
- Meat, *n.* Inyama, flesh ; inyamakazi, game.
- Medicine, *n.* Iyeza.
- Meditate, *v.i.* Ukucamanga.
- Meek, *adj.* Lulamile.
- Meekness, *n.* Ukululama.
- Meet, *v.t.* Ukuhlangana ; ukuhlangabeza, to go to meet.
- Meet, *adj.* Fanele.
- Meeting, *n.* Intlanganiso.
- Melancholy, *adj.* Negxuba ; nesingqala.
- Melon, *n.* Ivatala.
- Melt, *v.t.* Ukunyibilikisa ; metal ; ukuqina, fat ; *v.t.* ukunyibilika.
- Member, *n.* Ilungu, of the body, or of a society.
- Memory, *n.* Inkumbulo.
- Mend, *v.t.* Ukuthunga, to sew ; ukulungisa, to put right.
- Mention, *v.t.* Ukukhankanya.
- Merciful, *adj.* Nenceba.
- Merry, *adj.* Chwayitile.
- Merry-making, *n.* Umgcobo.
- Message, *n.* Umyalezo ; ilizwi ; udaba.
- Messenger, *n.* Isithunywa ; isigidimi, an express.
- Metal, *n.* Intsimbi.
- Midday, *n.* Imini enkulu.
- Middle, *adj.* Phakathi ; *n.* isazulu, centre.
- Midnight, *n.* Ubusuku obukhulu.
- Midst, *adj.* Phakathi.
- Might, *n.* Amandla.
- Mightily, *adv.* Ngamandla.
- Mild, *adj.* Lulamile.
- Milk, *n.* Ubisi, sweet ; amasi, sour.
- Milk, to, *v.t.* Ukusenga.
- Milk-pail, *n.* Ihunga.
- Mill, or mill-stone, *n.* Iitye lokusila.
- Millepede, *n.* Isongololo.
- Millet, *n.* Amazimba, Kafir-corn.
- Million, *n.* Isigidi.
- Mimosa, *n.* Umnga.
- Mince, *v.t.* Ukunqunqa, to cut small.
- Mind, *n.* Ingqondo, intellect ; intliziyo, heart ; umxhelo, disposition, will.
- Mine, *poss. pron.* Am, lam, yam, sam, etc., according to the class of noun.
- Mingle, *v.t.* Ukudibanisa ; ukuxuba ; ukuvanga ; ukuphithikeza.
- Mire, *n.* Udaka, mud ; umgxobhozo, slough.
- Miracle, *n.* Ummangaliso.
- Mischief, *n.* Ubumenemene.
- Mischievously, *adv.* Ngobumenemene.
- Misery, *n.* Ububi ; ubuhlungu bentliziyo.
- Miserable, *adj.* Mbi ; isithukuthezi.
- Mislead, *v.t.* Ukulahlekisa.
- Miss, fail, mistake, *v.t.* Ukuphosa.
- Missionary, *n.* Umfundisi.
- Mission-station, *n.* Isikolo.
- Mist, *n.* Inkungu.
- Mistress of house, *n.* Inkosikazi.
- Mix, *v.t.* Ukudibanisa ; ukuxuba (see mingle).
- Mob, *v.t.* Imbuthumbuthu.
- Mock, *v.t.* Ukugxeka ; ukuhleka.

- Modest, adj.** Neentloni.  
**Moist, adj.** Nyakamile, or vundile, of earth; manzi, wet.  
**Moisten, v.t.** Ukunyakamisa; ukunyela.  
**Mole, n.** Intuku.  
**Moment, n.** Iphanyazo; umzuzwana.  
**Money, n.** Imali.  
**Monkey, n.** Inkawu, brown; intsimango, grey.  
**Month, n.** Inyanga.  
**Moon, n.** Inyanga; new moon, inyanga entsha, or inyanga ethwasayo; full moon, inyanga ehlangeneyo.  
**Moreover, adv.** Kanjalo.  
**Morning, n.** Ukusa; umso.  
**Morning star, n.** Ikhwezi.  
**Morrow, n.** Umso; *adv.* ngomso.  
**Morsel, n.** Intwana; icuntsu.  
**Mortal, adj.** Nokufa.  
**Mosquito, n.** Ingcongconi.  
**Moth, n.** Uvivingane; inundu, clothes moth or insect.  
**Mother, n.** My mother, uma. Unyoko, your mother. Unina, his or her mother.  
**Mother-in-law, n.** Umkhwekazi.  
**Motion, n.** Intshukumo.  
**Motion with hand, to, v.t.** Ukuphekuzisa; ukuwangawangisa.  
**Moult, v.i.** Ukuhluba.  
**Mount, v.t.** Ukunyuka; ukukhwela, on a horse or vehicle; *n.* induh, a little hill.  
**Mourn, v.i.** Ukulila; ukubanosizi.  
**Mournful, adj.** Nokulila.  
**Mouse, n.** Impuku; inqalu, field mouse.  
**Mouth, n.** Umlomo; ichweba, of a river.  
**Move, to, v.t.** Ukushukumisa, to shake; *ukususa*, to move; *ukusuka*, to go away; *ukuhamba*, to go; *ukushenxa*, to move one's self out of the way; *v.i.* ukushukuma.  
**Much, adj.** Ninzi.  
**Much, more adv.** Kakhulu ngakumbi.  
**Much, very, adj.** Kakhulu or kakubi.  
**Mud, n.** Udaka.  
**Muddy, adj.** Nodaka.  
**Mule, n.** Iyesile; undlebende.  
**Multiply, v.t.** Ukwandisa; *v.i.* ukwanda.  
**Multitude, n.** Indimbane, of people; umhlambi, of cattle.  
**Murder, v.t.** Ukubulala.  
**Murder, n.** Umbulali.  
**Murmur, v.t.** Ukukrokra; ukudumzela.  
**Music, n.** No general word; but Ukucula, to sing; ukubetha igubu, to beat a drum.  
**Mutton, n.** Inyama yegusha.  
**My, poss. pron.** Ami, wami, yami, sami, lwami, etc.  
**Myself, pron.** Isiqu sam.  
**Myself, of or by.** Ngokwam.  
**Mystery, n.** Imfihlakalo.

## N

- Null**, *n.* Uzipho, finger-nail; isi-khonkwane, iron nail; *v.t.* uku-bethelela.
- Naked**, *adj.* Ze.
- Nakedness**, *n.* Ubuze.
- Name**, *n.* Igama.
- Narrate**, *v.t.* Ukubalisa; ukushumayela.
- Narration**, *n.* Imbali; intshumayelo.
- Narrow**, *adj.* Xinene.
- Narrowness**, *n.* Ingxinano.
- Narrow**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukucutha.
- Nasty**, *adj.* Mbi; ngcolile.
- Nation**, *n.* Uhlanga; isizwe.
- Nature**, *n.* Isimo, disposition; imvelo, birth.
- Nay**, *adv.* Hayi.
- Near**, *adj.* Kufuphi; kufutshane; *adv.* phantsi, almost, nearly.
- Neat**, *adj.* Ntle.
- Neatly**, *adv.* Kakuhle.
- Necessity**, *n.* Imfuneko; ukuswela, want.
- Neck**, *n.* Of the body, intamo; of a mountain pass, inkalo.
- Necklace**, *n.* Isambalo.
- Need**, *n.* Ukuswela.
- Needle**, *n.* Inaliti. The old Xhosa needle-eye for sewing, isilanda.
- Neglect**, *v.t.* Ukulibala, by forgetfulness.  
*Ukutyekisa*, by slight wrong;  
*ukulahla*, by wilful neglect.
- Neighbour**, *n.* Ummelwane.
- Neither**, *conj.* Namnye; nanye; nalinye, etc., not one.
- Nest**, *n.* Indlu yentaka.
- Nettle**, *n.* Irawu; ububazi.
- Net**, *n.* Uthambo.
- Never**, *adv.* Naphakade.
- Nevertheless**, *adv.* Nangona; noko.
- New**, *adj.* Entsha.
- Newness**, *n.* Ubutsha.
- News**, *n.* Iindaba.
- Next**, *adv.* Kufuphi, in place; landelayo, in time; ozayo.
- Night**, *n.* Ubusuku.
- Night**, *by*, *adv.* Ngobusuku.
- Night**, *every*, Ubusuku ngobusuku.
- No**, *adv.* Hayi.
- Noble**, *adv.* Dumileyo.
- Nod**, *v.i.* Ukunqwaleka; ukunqwala.
- Noise**, *n.* Ingxokozelo; intloko-ma.
- None, no one.** Namnye, nanye, nalinye, with the negative verbal prefix and *kho*; as *akukho namnye*, there is no one, no person; *akukho nalinye ihashe*, there is not one horse.
- Nonsense**, *n.* Ubudenge; amampunge.
- Nonsensically**, *adv.* Ngobudenge.
- North**, *adj.* Inode.
- Nose**, *n.* Impumlo.
- Nostril**, *n.* Intunja, yempumlo.
- Notable**, *adj.* Bonakalayo, yaziwayo; yazekayo, known.
- Nothing**, Nento, *lit.* not even a thing. It is also expressed by the negative verbal prefix *asi*, *aku*, etc. with *nto*, *lutho*, etc., as: 1. Asiyonto, it is nothing;

2. Akukho nto, there is nothing.  
 3. Asilutho, it is nothing of consequence.  
 Notice, *n.* Isaziso.  
 Notify, *v.t.* Ukwazisa.  
 Notwithstanding, *n.* Nangona ;  
 noko.  
 Nourish, *v.t.* Ukondla.  
 Nourishment, *n.* Ukutya oko-  
 melezayo.
- Now, *adv.* Kaloku ngoku.  
 Number, *v.t.* Ukubala ; *n.* inani.  
 Numerous, *adj.* Ninzi.  
 Nurse, *n.* Umgcini wabafayo,  
 umongi, umfukamisi.  
 Nurse, to, *v.t.* Ukwanyisa.  
 1. To nurse a baby, ukwanyisa.  
 2. To nurse a patient, ukonga.  
 Nurse-girl, *n.* Umgcini wom-  
 ntwana, impeclesi.

O

- Oats, forage, *n.* Ihabile.  
 Oath, *n.* Isifungo.  
 Oath, to swear an, *v.i.* Ukufunga.  
 Obedience, *n.* Intobeko ; intu-  
 mekelelo.  
 Object, *v.i.* Ukwala, ukumanga-  
 la, to complain.  
 Observe, *v.i.* Ukugqala ; uku-  
 gqalisela.  
 Obstinacy, *n.* Iinkani.  
 Obstinate, *adj.* Neenkani.  
 Obstinate, *adv.* Ngeenkani.  
 Obstruct, *v.t.* Ukuxaka ukuthi-  
 ntela ; ukubandeza.  
 Obtain, *v.i.* Ukuzuza ; ukwa-  
 mkela, as pay or reward ; uku-  
 fumana, to find.  
 Occasion, *n.* Ilixa ; ixesha, time ;  
 ithuba, opportunity.  
 Occasion, to cause or, *v.t.* Uku-  
 banga.  
 Ocean, *n.* Ulwandle.  
 Odour, *n.* Ivumba.  
 Offensive, *adj.* Okuyintshontsho ;  
 okuqumbisayo.  
 Of, *prep.*, is expressed in several  
 ways :—  
 1. By the possessive parti-  
 cles belonging to each  
 class of nouns. These are ;  
*wa, la, ya, sa, wa, lwa,* etc.  
 They are prefixed to the  
 noun which follows as  
 the possessive. The *a*  
 may be modified by the  
 first vowel of the noun  
 following and may become  
*we, wo, le, lo,* and so on,  
 as : 'The child of the  
 woman, umntwana wo-  
 mfazi ; the horse of the  
 man, or the man's horse,  
 ihashe lendoda.  
 2. By *ka* or *lika* before names  
 of persons, the horse of  
 John, ihashe likaJohn ; the  
 grave of Sandile, ingcwaba  
 likaSandile.  
 3. By noun cases or pro-  
 noun forms when the  
*prep. of* follows a verb : I  
 borrow it of him, *ndibole-  
 ke kuye* ; he spoke of them,  
*i.e.* about them, *wathetha  
 ngabo.*  
*Off, adv.* Kude, far off.

- Off, to take, v.t.** Ukususa.  
 To cut off, ukunqumla ;  
 to tear off, ukukrazula ;  
 to run off, away, ukuzimela ;  
 ukuqwesha.
- Offence, n.** Isikhubekiso ; isi-xakaniso ; isono.
- Offend, v.t.** Ukuqumbisa ; ukona.
- Offender, n.** Umoni.
- Offer, v.t.** Ukubingelela, sacrificially ; ukunikela, to hand over.
- Offering, n.** Idini ; umnikelo.
- Officer, n.** Umphathi.
- Often, adv.** Futhi ; or by the verb ukuhlala ; ukumana.
- Oil, n.** Ioli ; amafutha.
- Oil, to, v.t.** Ukuthambisa ; ukugalela ioli.
- Old, adj.** Ndala, in years ; gugile, worn out from use, luphele, grown old.
- Omnipotent, adj.** Namandla onke.
- Omnipresent, n.** Ukubakho kuzo zonke iindawo.
- Omniscient, n.** Ukuzazi zonke izinto.
- On, prep.** 1. By phezu : as *phezu kwamatyé*, upon the stones.  
 2. By locative of the noun ; as *endleleni*, on the road.  
 3. By *nga, nge, ngo* : as *nge-mini ethile*, on certain day.
- Once, adv.** Kube kanye.
- One, adj.** Nye, the prefix varying with the class of noun.  
 One house, *Indlu enye*.  
 One dish, *Isitya esinye*.  
 One person, *Umntu omnye*.  
 One horse, *Ihaske elinye*.
- Oneness, n.** Ubunye.
- Only, adj.** Kuphela.
- Open, adj.** Vulekile ; ekuhlени, public, not concealed.
- Open, to, v.t.** Ukuvula.
- Opening, n.** Ithuba.
- Openly, adv.** Ekuhlени ; Ngokubonakalayo ; ngokutyhilekileyo.
- Oppose, v.t.** Ukwala ; ukuchasa.
- Oppress, v.t.** Ukubandezela ; ukucudisa.
- Oppression, n.** Imbandezelo ; ingcinezelo.
- Or, conj.** Umhlawumbi ; okanye.
- Order, v.t.** Ukuyala ; ukuthuma ; ukuphatha.
- Order, a law, n.** Isiyalo ; ilizwi ; umthetho.
- Origin, n.** Isiqalo, beginning ; imbangi, cause.
- Ornament, v.t.** Ukuvathisa ; ukuhombisa.
- Ornament, n.** Isihombo.
- Orphan, n.** Inkedama.
- Ostrich, n.** Inciniba.
- Other, pron.** Enye ; yimbi ; as Enye indoda, the other man ; abantu bambi, other persons.
- Otherwise, adv.** Kungenjalo : ngenye indlela ; okanye.
- Ought.** 1. By *nge*, prefixed to the present tense of the verb ; *nge-ndigoduka*, I ought to go home ; *nge sinceda lo mntu*, we ought to help that person.  
 2. By *fanele adj.*, fit proper ; *sifanele ukubhatala amatyala ethu*, we ought to pay our debts.
- Our, pron.** Bethu, ethu, wethu, yethu, sethu, lwethu, according to noun.
- Ourselves, pron.** Thina ; as *be sihamba thina*, we went ourselves.

- Ourselves**, Ngokwethu ; sihleli ngokwethu, we stay by ourselves.  
**Outside, out**, *adv.* Ngaphandle.  
**Outcast**, *adj.* Lahliwe ; gxothisiwe.  
**Outlet**, *n.* Indawo yokuphuma.  
**Outrage**, *n.* Ubudlwengu ; *v.t.* ukudlwengula.  
**Over**, *adv.* Pshesheya ; as *pshesheya kolwandle*, over the sea ; phezu, as ; ityala elilengalenga phezu kwethu, debt hanging over us.  
**Overcome**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa.  
**Overflow**, *v.i.* Ukuphalaka, ukuphuphuma.  
**Overhear**, *v.t.* Ukuvela.  
**Over-sight**, *n.* Ukuvelela, supervision ; isiphoso, mistake.  
**Overspread**, *v.t.* Ukunaba ; ukutyhutyha.  
**Overtake**, *v.t.* Ukufumana.  
**Overthrow**, *v.t.* Ukuwisa, to overturn ; ukuchitha, to scatter.  
**Overwhelm**, *v.t.* Ukugubungela ; ukuyeyelisela.  
**Overwhelmed**, *adj.* Cubhukile, with sorrow.  
**Owe**, *adj.* Netyala.  
**Owl**, *n.* Isikhova ; isihuluhulu, the horned owl.  
**Own**, *v.i.* Ukuvuma, to acknowledge ; ukubanga, to claim.  
**Owner**, *n.* Umnini.  
**Ox**, *n.* Inkabi.  
**Oyster**, *n.* Imbaza.

## P

- Pace, a step**, *n.* Inyathelo ; ibanga.  
**Pacity**, *v.t.* Ukuxolisa ; ukuthomakalisa.  
**Pack**, *v.t.* Ukubopha, to load up ukuthwesa, on a pack horse ; ukubekelela, to stack.  
**Package**, *n.* Umthwalo ; ipasile.  
**Pail**, *n.* Umphanda ; ithunga, for milk.  
**Pain**, *n.* Intlungu ; ihlaba, a sharp pain.  
**Padlock**, *n.* Iqhaga.  
**Painful**, *adj.* Neentlungu.  
**Paint**, *v.t.* Ukuqaba.  
**Painter**, *n.* Umqabi.  
**Painting**, *n.* Umqabo.  
**Palm**, *n.* Intende yesandla, of the hand.  
**Pair**, *n.* Isibini.  
**Pairs, in**, Ngambini.  
**Pale**, *adj.* Lubelu ; xwebile ; luthuli.  
**Palpitate**, *v.i.* Ukukhefuzela.  
**Palsy**, *n.* Idumbe.  
**Pan**, *n.* Ipani ; imbiza, a pot.  
**Pang**, *n.* Ubuhlungu obukhulu.  
**Panic**, *n.* Ivuso ; ukothuka.  
**Pant**, *v.i.* Ukukhefuza ; ukuphefumla.  
**Panther**, *n.* Ihlosi.  
**Pap, porridge**, *n.* Isidudu ; nipple of the breasts, ingono.  
**Paper**, *n.* Iphepha ; incwadi.  
**Parable**, *n.* Umzekeliso.  
**Parcel**, *n.* Ipasile ; umqulu, a bundle, a bale.  
**Parch**, *v.i.* Ukugcada ; ukuqina ; ukukroqa.  
**Pardon**, *v.t.* Ukuxolela ; *n.* uxolelo.

- Pare**, *v.t.* Ukuchuba ; ukuxoza, to take off bark.
- Parrot**, *n.* Isikhwenene.
- Parsimony**, *n.* Ukuvimba.
- Part**, a portion, *n.* Inxenyé.
- Part**, *v.t.* Ukwahlula ; ukwahlukana, to part company.
- Partake**, *v.i.* Ukuba nesabelo ; ukwamkela, to receive.
- Parting**, *n.* Ukwahlukana.
- Partner**, *n.* Umlingane, ikhohlwane.
- Partly**, *adv.* Ngokwenxenyé.
- Partridge**, *n.* Isakhwatsha.
- Pass**, *v.t.* Ukudlula.  
To go beyond, ukugqitha ; to pass through, ukucanda.
- Pass**, *n.* Inkalo between mountains ; inyoba, a gorge.
- Passable**, *adj.* Yadluleka.
- Passage way**, *n.* Indlela ; ume-ndo, main road.
- Passion**, *n.* Umsindo, anger ; umnqweno, desire.
- Passionate**, *adj.* Nomsindo ; *n.* isigcwelegcwele, a passionate person.
- Passover**, *n.* Ipasika, Isidlo-sodlulo.
- Past**, *adj.* Dlulile ; kudala, past time.
- Paste**, *n.* Uncangathi, any adhesive matter.
- Pastures**, *n.* Idlelo ; utyani ; ingca ; ihlungu, burnt pasture.
- Pasture cattle**, to, Ukudlisa.
- Patch**, *v.t.* Ukubeka isiziba ; ukuxola, to patch clothing.
- Patch**, *n.* Isiziba.
- Path**, *n.* Indlela.
- Patience**, *n.* Umonde ; unyamezelo, endurance.
- Patient**, *adj.* Nomonde.
- Patiently**, *adv.* Ngomonde ; ngokunyamezela.
- Patter**, *v.t.* Ukuchaphaza, of rain.
- Pattern**, *n.* Isilinganiso ; ingxam.
- Pause**, *v.i.* Ukunqumama.
- Paw**, *v.t.* Ukuphanda, to scratch, to scrape.
- Pay**, *n.* Umvuzo, wages.
- Pay a Debt**, to, Ukuhlawul' ityala.
- Peace**, *n.* Uxolo.
- Peaceful**, *adj.* Xolile ; ngxoxolo.
- Peacemaker**, *n.* Umxolisi ; umlamlali.
- Peach**, *n.* Ipesika.
- Peacock**, *n.* Ipikoko.
- Peak**, *n.* Incopho ; itsolo.
- Peel**, *v.t.* Ukuxoza ; ukuchuba ; *v.i.* ukuhlubuluka, as skin.
- Peel**, *n.* Ixolo.
- Peep**, *v.i.* Ukulunguza ; ukunyo-ndla ; ukukroba.
- Peg**, *n.* Isikhonkwane ; *v.t.* ukubethelela, to peg out a skin to dry.
- Penalty**, *n.* Intlawulo.
- Penetrate**, *v.t.* Ukungena ukuhlaba ; ukugqobhoza.
- Penitence**, *n.* Inguquko.
- Penny**, *n.* Idobilityi ; ipeni.
- People**, *n.* Abantu.
- Perceive**, *v.t.* Ukuqonda ; ukubona, to see.
- Perdition**, destruction, *n.* Intshabalalo.
- Perfect**, *v.t.* Ukufeza ; ukuzalisa.
- Perfect**, *adj.* Fezekile ; zalisekile.
- Perforate**, *v.t.* Ukuchucha.
- Perforate**, *v.t.* Ukutyhutyha ; ukugqobhozela.
- Perform**, *v.t.* Ukwenza.
- Performance**, act, *n.* Isenzo.



- Perhaps, adv.** Umhlawumbi.  
**Peril, n.** Ingozi; umngcipheko.  
**Period, n.** Isithuba; ixesha.  
**Perish, v.i.** Ukubhubha, to die; ukubuna, to wither; ukushwabana, to dry up.  
**Perjury, n.** Ukufungela; ubuxoki.  
**Permanently, adv.** Kungena kuyeka; isigxina.  
**Permission, n.** Imvumelo.  
**Permit, v.t.** Ukuvumela.  
**Perpetual, adj.** Kungenakuphela.  
**Perpetually, adv.** Ngokungena kuphela  
**Perpendicular, adj.** Tse; nkqo; bhuxe.  
**Perplex, v.i.** Ukuxaka.  
**Perplexity, n.** Ukuxakeka; isithingathinga.  
**Persecute, v.t.** Ukutshutshisa.  
**Persecution, n.** Intshutshiso.  
**Persevere, v.t.** Ukunyamezela.  
**Perseverance, n.** Unyamezelo.  
**Persist, v.i.** Ukuzingisa.  
**Persistence, obstinancy, n.** Inkani; ubulukhuni.  
**Person, n.** Umntu.  
**Personal, adj.** Yesiqu.  
**Personality, self, n.** Isiqu, with a pronoun following; isiqu sakhe, he himself.  
**Personality, adv.** Ngesiqu; ngokwakhe.  
**Persuasion, n.** Ucengo; ucinezelo.  
**Perspiration, n.** Ukubila; izithukuthuku.  
**Perspire, v.i.** Ukubila.  
**Persuade, v.t.** Ukucenga.  
**Perverse, adj.** Gwexile.
- Perversity, n.** Ubugwenxa.  
**Pervert, v.t.** Ukugwenxisa; ukuwexula.  
**Perverted, adj.** Gwexile.  
**Pester, v.t.** Ukukhathaza.  
**Pestilence, n.** Isifo esibhubhisayo.  
**Pestle, n.** Into yokukhanda amayeza.  
**Pet, n.** Isithandwa; ihanisi.  
**Petticoat, n.** Isikhaka, of skin or cotton; iondolokhwe, (from Dutch), ordinary calico.  
**Pettiness, n.** Ubuncinane.  
**Petition, n.** Isicelo; umthandazo.  
**Petty, adj.** Ncinane.  
**Pharisee, n.** Umfarasi.  
**Physic, n.** Iyeza.  
**Physician, n.** Igqira.  
**Pick, v.t.** Ukuqasha; ukunyula, to choose.  
 to pick up something lost, ukuchola,  
 to pick or dig, ukulima; ukumba.  
**Pick, n.** Igaba, hoe; ikhuba.  
**Picture, n.** Umfanekiso.  
**Piece, n.** Iceba; intwana; iqhekeza, of bread.  
**Pierce, v.t.** Ukuhlaba; ukugwaza.  
**Pierced, adj.** Hlatyiwe.  
**Pig, n.** Ihangu; ingulube, wild pig.  
**Pigeon, or dove, n.** Ihobe.  
**Pile, v.t.** Ukufumba.  
**Pile, n.** Imfumba; igogo, heap of firewood.  
**Pilfer, v.t.** Ukushinta; ukubaiintwana ezincinane.  
**Pillage, n.** Ixhoba; v.t. ukubhada, to rob.  
**Pillar, n.** Intsika.

- Pillow**, *n.* Umqamelo.
- Pin**, *n.* Isipeliti; isilanda.
- Pinch**, *v.t.* Ukunyikila; ukumfikila; ukusweba.
- Pine**, *v.i.* Ukungcungcutheka; ukubhitya; also ukusobozeka.
- Pipe**, *n.* Inqawa, for smoking; ijelo, a tube.
- Pistol**, *n.* Umpana; ipistoli.
- Pity**, *n.* Usizi; ukusizela, to pity.
- Pitifully**, *adv.* Ngosizi.
- Pitilessly**, *adv.* Ngokungena-lusizi.
- Place**, *n.* Indawo; umzi.
- Place**, *n. v.t.* Ukubeka.
- Places, in all.** Kuzo zonke iindawo.
- Plague**, *n.* Isibetho sesifo, disease; inkathazo, trouble.
- Plague**, *v.t.* Ukukhathaza.
- Plain**, *n.* Ithafa; *adj.* cacile; ekuhleni, clear.
- Plainly**, *adv.* Ngokusekuhleni; ngokucacileyo.
- Plait**, *v.t.* Ukuluka; ukusonta.
- Plan**, *n.* Iqhinga; icebo.
- Plant**, *n.* Isityalo; *v.t.* Ukutyala.
- Plate**, *n.* Ipleyiti, from the English; isitya.
- Plank**, *n.* Iplanga, from the English.
- Plaster**, *v.t.* Ukutyabeka; ukugudula.
- Play**, *v.t.* Ukudlala, games, or on an instrument; ukufeketha, to jest.
- Playing**, *n.* Into yokudlalisa.
- Pleasant**, *adj.* Mnandi; yolile.
- Pleasantness**, *n.* U'mnandi.
- Please**, *v.t.* Ukuvuyisa; ukuyolisa.
- Pleasure**, *n.* Ubuyolo; umgcobo.
- Pledge**, *n.* Isibambiso; *v.t.* ukunika isibambiso.
- Plentiful**, *adj.* Ninzi.
- Plentifulness**, *n.* Ubuninzi.
- Plenty**, *n.* Indyebo.
- Pilable**, *adj.* Thambile.
- Plot**, *n.* Iqhinga; a secret scheme, iyelenqe; of land, umhlaba.
- Plot**, *v.t.* Ukwenza iqhinga; ukuceba.
- Plough**, *v.t.* Ukulima.
- Plough**, *n.* Ipuluwa.
- Plover**, *n.* Igxiya.
- Pluck, up or out to**, Ukuncothula; ukudonyula.  
To pluck feathers, ukuxhwitha;  
to pluck fruit, ukukha;  
to pluck leaves, ukudwaba.
- Plug, stopper, cork**, *n.* Isivumbo.
- Plunder**, *n.* Amaxhoba.
- Plunderer**, *n.* Umphangi.
- Plunge**, *v.t.* Ukuntywila, to dive; *v.t.* akuntywilisa; ukudlokova, to plunge as a horse.
- Poet**, *n.* Imbongi.
- Point, a sharp**, *n.* Itsolo; incam, end or point of anything.
- Point, to**, *v.t.* To a place, ukwalatha; to point out, explain, ukuchaza; to sharpen, ukubaza.
- Pointed**, *adj.* Baziwe.
- Poison**, *n.* Ubuthi; ityhefu.
- Poison, to**, *v.t.* Ukubulala ngokudlisa ubuthi.
- Poke**, *v.t.* Ukuhlaba.
- Pole**, *n.* Isibonda; intsika; a bar, umvalo.
- Pole cat**, *n.* Iqaqa.
- Policeman**, *n.* Ipolisa.

- Polish, v.t.** Ukukhazimlisa, to brighten; ukugudisa, to smooth.
- Pollute, v.t.** Ukungcolisa.
- Pollution, n.** Ukungcola.
- Polygamy, n.** Isithembu.
- Pond, v.ji.** Ichibi; iqula; idike.
- Ponder, v.t.** Ukugqala; ukuca-manga.
- Ponderous, adj.** Nzima.
- Pony, n.** Ihashe elifuphi; iponi.
- Pool, n.** Ichibi; isadunge.
- Poor, adj.** Hlwempu.
- Porcupine, n.** Incanda.
- Pork, n.** Inyama yehangu.
- Porridge, n.** Isidudu; umqa, thick porridge.
- Portable, adj.** Nokuthwalwa; thwaleka lula.
- Portion, n.** Isabelo.
- Portrait, n.** Umfanekiso.
- Position, n.** Isimo; isihlalo.
- Possess, v.t.** Expressed by to be with, ukuba—with pronoun corresponding to noun: as, I have a horse and oxen, ndinalo ihashe neenkabi.
- Possession, n.** Imfuyo. goods; ilifa, inheritance.
- Possible, adj.** Kunokwenzeka.
- Post, n.** Isibonda; umgubasi, door post; iposi, *i.e.* mail, post office.
- Posterity, n.** Inzala; izizukulwana.
- Pot, n.** Imbiza.
- Potatoes, n.** Amatapile; iitapile.
- Potter, n.** Umbumbi.
- Poultice, n.** Ipolitisi; umqa.
- Pound, n.** Iponti, a sovereign; isikiti, pound for cattle.
- Pound, v.t.** Ukutyumza; ukukhanda.
- Pour, v.t.** Ukuphalaza, on the ground; ukugalela, into a vessel; ukutha, into a calabash; ukuthulula, to pour out.
- Poverty, n.** Ubuhlwempu.
- Powder, n.** Umsizi; iruluwa, gunpowder.
- Power, n.** Amandla.
- Powerful, adj.** Namandla.
- Powerfully, adv.** Ngamandla.
- Practice, n.** Isenzo, act; isiko, custom.
- Praise, n.** Indumiso; udumo.
- Praise, to, v.t.** Ukudumisa; ukubonga.
- Prate, v.t.** Ukurabasa; ukufeke-tha, also ukurafuza.
- Prattle, v.i.** Ukucalucaluzo.
- Pray, v.t.** Ukuthandaza; ukukhunga.
- Prayer, n.** Umthandazo; isikhungo.
- Preach, v.t.** Ukushumayela.
- Preaching, n.** Intshumayelo.
- Preacher, n.** Umshumayeli.
- Precaution, n.** Isilumkiso.
- Precede, v.t.** Ukwandulela; ukukhokela.
- Precentor, n.** Umhlabeli weculo.
- Precept, n.** Umthetho; isiyalelo.
- Precious, adj.** Nqabile; precious things, zinto ezinqabileyo.
- Precipitate, v.t.** Ukuwisa phantsi; ukutyhuthutyhuthuza.
- Precipice, n.** Iliwa.
- Predict, v.t.** Ukuxelela ngenxa engaphambili.
- Prefer, v.t.** Ukucitsha, to choose; ukubeka ngaphambili.
- Preference, n.** Unyulo, also ucitsho.

- Prejudice, n.** Inkcaso.  
**Pregnant, adj.** Mithi.  
**Prepare, v.t.** Ukulungisa; ukulungiselela, to prepare for.  
**Presence, n.** Ubukho; in the presence, ebusweni.  
**Present, v.t.** Ukubhasela, as a gift; ukubekela to lay before.  
**Presently, adv.** Ngoku; ngeli xesha; kwangoku.  
**Preserve, v.t.** Ukulondoloza.  
**Press, v.t.** Ukucinezela, to squeeze.  
**Presume, to guess, at, v.j.** Ukuthelekelela.  
**Pretence, n.** Inkohliso; ukuze-nzisa.  
**Pretend, v.t.** Ukuzenzisa; ukukhohlisa.  
**Pretender, n.** Umkhohlisi.  
**Pretty, adj.** Mhle; ntle.  
**Prettiness, n.** Ubuhle.  
**Prettily, adv.** Ngobuhle.  
**Prevail, v.t.** Ukoyisa.  
**Prevaricate, v.t.** Ukuxakisa; also ukulahlekisa; ukuphambukisa.  
**Prevent, v.t.** Ukubandeza, to hinder; ukwalela, to forbid.  
**Prey, spoil or booty, n.** Ixhoba.  
**Price, n.** Ixabiso; idla ntoni na? what does it cost, *i.e.* what does it eat?  
**Pride, n.** Ikratshi.  
**Prince, n.** Inkosi; inkosana.  
**Princess, n.** Inkosazana.  
**Principal, n.** Oyintloko, one who is the head, umongameli.  
**Print, v.t.** Ukushicilela, *i.e.* to press.  
**Prison, n.** Intolongo.  
**Prisoner, n.** Umbanjwa.  
**Private, adj.** Akunakutyhilwa, *i.e.* cannot be revealed, fihlakele imfihlakalo.  
**Privately, adv.** Ngasese.  
**Privilege, n.** Ilungelo.  
**Prize, n.** Umvuzo; *v.t.* ukubeka ixabiso; ukunqabisa.  
**Probable, adj.** Umhlawumbi.  
**Probably, adv.** Ngathi.  
**Probation, n.** Ixesha lokulingwa.  
**Probe, v.t.** Ukuphendla; ukutshula.  
**Proceed, v.i.** Ukuhamba; ukavela.  
**Proceeding, n.** Isenzo; ihambiso.  
**Procession, n.** Ukrozo lwabantu, of people.  
**Proclaim, v.t.** Ukushumayela; ukumemeza.  
**Proclamation, n.** Isishumayelo; Isimemezelo.  
**Procrastinate, v.i.** Ukulibala; ukuzilazila; ukuqhoqhonya.  
**Procrastination, n.** Iqhoqhonya.  
**Procure, v.t.** Ukuzuza.  
**Prodical, to be, v.i.** Ukuxhamla; ukuchitha.  
**Produce, v.t.** ukuchuma, as land; ukuvelisa, to bring out; *n.* imveliso; isiqhamo, fruit.  
**Profane, v.t.** Ukungcolisa; ukudyoza, to befoul, slander; *adj.* ngcolile.  
**Profess, v.t.** Ukuvumela.  
**Profession, n.** Imvumelo.  
**Profit, n.** Inzuzo.  
**Profit, v.t.** Ukunceda; ukuzuza.  
**Progeny, n.** Inzalo; usapho.  
**Progress, n. n.** Ihambo; *v.i.* ukuhambisa.  
**Prohibit v.t.** Ukwalela.

- Prohibition**, *n.* Isalelo.
- Project**, *n.* Umcimbi; icebo.
- Promise**, *v.t.* Ukuthembisa; *n.* isithembiso; iding.
- Proof**, *n.* Isiboniso; ubungqina.
- Prop**, *n.* Isisekelo; isixhaso; *v.t.* ukusekela.
- Propel**, *v.t.* Ukuqhuba; ukuhambisa.
- Proper**, *adj.* Fanele; fanelekile.
- Property**, *adv.* Ngokufaneleki-leyo.
- Property**, *n.* Impahla; ubutyebi.
- Prophecy**, *n.* Isiprofeto.
- Prophecy**, *v.t.* Ukuprofeta; ukunywebelela, to predict evil.
- Prophet**, *n.* Umprofeti.
- Propitiation**, *n.* Intlawulelo.
- Prostrate**, *v.t.* Ukuwisa.
- Proud**, *adj.* Nekratshi.
- Proudly**, *adv.* Ngekratshi.
- Prosecute**, *v.t.* Ukusukela; ukutshutshisa, annoy or persecute.
- Prosper**, *v.i.* Ukuchuma; ukwanda.
- Protracted**, *adj.* Uzungu, noun used adjectively, meaning length round about.
- Prove**, *v.t.* Ukuvavanya, to test; ukucikida; ukumisa, to establish by facts or evidence.
- Provender**, *n.* Ukutya, ukutya kwamahashe, food for horses.
- Proverb**, *n.* Umzekeliso.
- Provide**, *v.t.* Ukuqweba; ukufuya, to lay up; ukuqwebela; ukulungisela, to provide for.
- Provoke**, *v.t.* Ukuqumbisa; ukucunukisa; ukuvusa iphike, to stir up a quarrel.
- Provoked**, *adj.* Caphukile; qumbile.
- Proximity**, *n.* Ubufuphi.
- Prudence**, *n.* Ubulumko; ukuhlakanipha.
- Prudent**, *adj.* Lumkile; hlakaniphile; thekelelela.
- Prune**, *v.t.* Ukuthena.
- Pry**, *v.t.* Ukulunguza; ukuhlola.
- Psalms**, *n.* Iculo; ingoma; indumiso.
- Public**, publicly, *adj.* Ekuhleni.
- Publication**, *n.* Intshumayelo; ukubhengeza.
- Publish**, *v.t.* Ukushumayela.
- Puff**, *v.t.* Ukuvuthela.
- Puff-adder**, *n.* Ibululu; iramba.
- Pull**, *v.t.* Ukutsala.
- Pulverise**, *v.t.* Ukutyumza; ukusila; ukuguba; ukucola.
- Pump**, *n.* Impompo.
- Pumpkin**, *n.* Ithanga; iphuzi, usolontsi.
- Punish**, *v.t.* Ukohlwaya; ukubetha.
- Punishment**, *n.* Isohlwayo; isibetho.
- Pup**, *n.* Injana.
- Pupil**, *n.* Umfundi, a learner; ukhozo lweliso, of the eye.
- Purchase**, *v.t.* Ukuthenga.
- Purchaser**, *n.* Umthengi.
- Pure**, *adj.* Ngewele; msulwa, free from blame; cocekile, free from fault; hlambulukile, free from pollution.
- Purge**, *v.t.* Ukuhlambulula, to cleanse; ukuxaxazisa; from bowels; ukutsheka.
- Purging**, *n.* Uxaxazo; utsheko.

- Purify**, *v.t.* Ukuhlambulula, to cleanse; ukungcwengisa, to filter.
- Purple**, *adj.* Bomvu-hlaza.
- Purpose**, *n.* Icebo; injongo.
- Purposely**, *adv.* Ngabom, *i.e.* intentionally.
- Purpose**, *v.t.* Ukucamanga; ukuceba.
- Pursue**, *v.t.* Ukusukela, to chase; ukuphuthuma, for rescue.
- Pus**, *n.* Ububovu.
- Put**, *v.t.* Ukubeka, to place; ukufaka, to put in. ukukhupha, to put outside. ukucima, to put out a light or fire.
- Putrify**, *v.i.* Ukubola.
- Putrid**, *adj.* Bolile.
- Puzzle**, *v.t.* Ukubhida; ukuxaka; *n.* Isixaki.
- Python**, *n.* Inamba.

## Q

- Quack**, to, like, a duck. Ukukhala.
- Quagmire**, *n.* Umgxobhozo.
- Quail**, *n.* Isagwityi.
- Quake**, *v.i.* Ukungcangcazela.
- Quantity**, *n.* Intabalala.
- Quality**, *n.* Uhlobo, kind.
- Quarrel**, *v.t.* Ukuphambana; Ukungxolisana; *n.* Imoambano; ingxabano.
- Queen**, *n.* Ukumkanikazi; Inkosikazi.
- Quell**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa.
- Quench**, *v.i.* Ukucima, to put out fire or candle; ukudambisa umsindo, to check anger.
- Querulous**, to be, *v.i.* Ukukrokra.
- Querulously**, *adv.* Ngokukrokra; ngokukhalaza.
- Question**, *n.* Umbuzo; *v.t.* ukubuza; ukuphika, to differ, to call in question.
- Quibble**, *n.* Iqhinga.
- Quibble**, to, *v.t.* Ukwenza iqhinga.
- Quick**, *adv.* Ngobungxamo.
- Quicken**, *v.t.* Ukukhawuleza, to hasten; ukungxamisa; ukuphilisa to make alive.
- Quickly**, *adv.* Msinya; ngokukhawuleza; ngobungxamo, etc.
- Quite**, *adj.* Kanye.
- Quiet**, to be, *v.ti.* Ukuzola; *v.t.* ukuzolisa; ukuthuzuzela, ukonwabisa, to calm, to comfort; *adj.* Zolile.
- Quill**, *n.* Usiba.
- Quince**, *n.* Ikwepile.
- Quinsy**, *n.* Umqala, sore throat.
- Quit**, *v.i.* Ukumka.
- Quiver**, *n.* Ikhohlombe; umpo ngolo.
- Quiver**, to, *v.i.* Ukudikizela.

## R

- R in Xhosa is a guttural, and is generally marked.
- Rabble**, *n.* Imbuthumbuthu.
- Race**, nationality, *n.* Isizwe.
- Race**, running, *n.* Ugqatso; of horses, uxhesho, of cattle, uleqo.
- Race**, *v.t.* Ukuxhesho, chase with horses; ukuleqa with cattle.
- Racket**, *n.* Ingxolo.
- Raft**, *n.* Isihlenga.
- Rag**, *n.* Isiziba, idlavu; rags, amajacu.
- Rage**, *n.* Uburalarume; umsinde.
- Rage**, to, *v.i.* Ukujala.
- Ragged**, *adj.* Dlavu; yakayaka. a person in rags, ijacu.
- Raggedness**, *n.* Ubudlavu.
- Rail**, *v.t.* Ukuthuka; ukugxeka.
- Rail**, a bar, *n.* Umvalo.
- Railing**, *n.* Isithuko; abusive language, ukuthuka.
- Railway**, *n.* Uloliwe, from the English.
- Raller**, *n.* Umthuki; umgxeki.
- Rainment**, *n.* Isivatho.
- Rain**, *n.* Imvula.
- Rain**, to, *v.i.* Ukuna.
- Raise**, *v.t.* Ukuphakamisa; ukufunqula.  
To set up, to establish, ukumisa; to advance, ukunyusa.
- Rake**, *n.* Isiqwakaniso; iere.
- Ram**, *n.* Inkunzi yegusha.
- Ramble**, *v.i.* Ukuhambahamba.
- Rambler**, *n.* Isibhadubhadu.
- Rancid**, *adj.* Nukayo.
- Rank**, *n.* Social rank or status, isimo.  
A row of soldiers, uluhlu; a row of things or houses, umtyino.
- Rank**, to place, *v.t.* Ukucamba; ukudwelisa.
- Ransom**, *n.* Intlawulo; isizi.
- Rapid**, *adj.* Ngxamayo; khawulezayo.
- Rapidly**, *adv.* Ngobungxamo; ngokukhawuleza.
- Rare**, *adj.* Nqabile; mbalwa.
- Rascal**, *n.* Itshinitshini.
- Rascality**, *n.* Ubungcwangu; ubutshinga.
- Rashly**, *adv.* Ngobutyhuthutyhuthu.
- Rashness**, *n.* Ubutyhuthutyhuthu.
- Rat**, *n.* Ibuzi.
- Rations**, provision, *n.* Umxhesho.
- Rattle**, *v.i.* Ukuhlokoma.
- Rave**, *v.i.* Ukudubadubeka, mentally; in anger, ukuba nomsindo; ukuphithizela.
- Ravage**, *v.t.* Ukuphanga.
- Ravager**, *n.* Umphangi.
- Raven**, *n.* Ihlungulu.
- Raw**, *adj.* Krvada.
- Rawness**, *n.* Ubukrvada.
- Reach**, *v.i.* To arrive, ukufika; stretch out the hand, ukufikelela; to take down, ukuthula.
- Ready**, *adj.* Lungile.
- Reap**, *v.t.* Ukuvuna.
- Reaper**, *n.* Umvuni.
- Rear**, *v.t.*, as a child. Ukondla; as a horse, ukudlokova, to set up, ukumisa; a. ngasemva.
- Reason**, *n.* Mind, ingqondo; cause, isizathu.

- Reason, *to*, *v.i.* Ukuvisisana, ukuxoxa.
- Rebuke, *v.i.* Ukuthethisa.
- Rebuker, *n.* Umthethisi.
- Recede, *v.i.* Ukuhlelha.
- Receive, *v.t.* Ukwamkela.
- Reckon, *v.t.* Ukubala.
- Recline, *v.t.* Ukwayama; ukungqengqa.
- Recollect, *v.t.* Ukukhumbula.
- Recollection, *n.* Inkumbulo; isikhumbulo.
- Recompence, *v.t.* Ukuhlawula; ukuvuza.
- Reconcile, *v.t.* Ukuxolelanisa.
- Reconciliation, *n.* Uxolelaniso.
- Recount, *v.t.* Ukubalisa.
- Recover, *v.t.* Ukufumana, to get back; ukuphila, from sickness.
- Rectify, *v.t.* Ukulungisa.
- Rectitude, *n.* Ukulunga.
- Red, *adj.* Bomvu.
- Redeem, *v.t.* Ukukhulula, to let loose; ukuhlawulela, to pay for; ukuhlangula, to deliver.
- Redeemer, *n.* Umkhululi.
- Redemption, *n.* Intlawulelo; inkululeko.
- Redness, *n.* Ububomvu.
- Reduce, *v.t.* Ukunciphisa.
- Reed, *n.* Ingcongolo; imfe, sweet.
- Reedbuck, *n.* Intlangu.
- Reel, *v.i.* Ukugexa; ukudengezela; ukuyoba.
- Refer, *to*, *v.t.* Ukubhekisa.
- Refine, *v.t.* Ukucokisa; ukuhlenga, to filter, clarify.
- Refiner, *n.* Umcokisi.
- Reflect, *v.i.* Ukucamanga.
- Reform, *v.t.* Ukulungisa, *v.i.* ukulunga.
- Reformation, *n.* Isilungiso; inguqulelo.
- Refrain, *v.i.* Ukuzibamba.
- Refresh, *v.i.* Ukuqabula; ukuziqabula, to refresh one's self.
- Refuge, *n.* Inqaba.
- Refuse, *v.t.* Ukwala. Refuse, rubbish, *n.* amakhambi; intlenga, dregs.
- Regard, *v.t.* To look at, ukukhangelala; to esteem, ukubuka; to care, ukukhathalela.
- Regeneration, *n.* Ukuzalwa ngokutsha.
- Regiment, *n.* Ibutho lamasoldati.
- Register, *v.t.* Ukubhala.
- Region, *n.* Ilizwe.
- Regret, *v.t.* Ukuba nosizi.
- Reiterate, *v.i.* Ukuphinda; ukukokela, to explain further.
- Reject, *v.t.* Ukulahla; ukweya, ukudela, to despise.
- Reign, *v.t.* Ukuphatha; ukulawula.
- Rejoice, *v.t.* Ukuvuya; ukuvuyisa, to cause joy.
- Relate, *v.t.* Ukubalisa; ukuxela.
- Relapse, *v.t.* Ukubuyela emva; ukuphinda emva.
- Relative, *n.* Isalamane; umzalwana.
- Release, *v.t.* Ukukhulula; ukuhlangula.
- Relent, *v.t.* Ukuthamba intliziyo; in remorse, ukuzizona.
- Reliance, *n.* Ukholo; ithemba; intembeko.
- Relief, *n.* Ukukhululeka; inkululeko.
- Religion, *n.* Unqulo.



- Relinquish**, *v.t.* Ukuyeka ; ukuncama.
- Rely**, *v.t.* Ukuthemba.
- Remain**, *v.i.* Ukusala ; ukuhlala.
- Remainder**, *n.* Isisalela.
- Remains**, *n.* Isidumbu, a corpse.
- Remedy to**, *v.t.* Ukulungisa ; to cure, ukuphilisa.
- Remember**, *v.t.* Ukukhumbula.
- Remembrance**, *n.* Isikhumbuzo.
- Remind**, *v.t.* Ukukhumbuzo.
- Remission**, *n.* Ukudambisa, of pain ; of sin, uxolelo.
- Remis**, *v.t.* Ukuxolela.
- Remnant**, *n.* Isisalela.
- Remonstrate**, *v.t.* Ukuthethisa ; ukuyala.
- Remonstrance**, *n.* Isithethiso ; isiyalo.
- Remote**, *adj.* Kude, in place ; in time, kudala.
- Remove**, *v.t.* Ukususa.  
To take anything out of the way, ukukhwelelisa.  
To remove to another place, ukufudusa.
- Removal**, *n.* Imfuduko ; imfuduso.
- Remunerate**, *v.t.* Ukuvuza.
- Rend**, *v.t.* Ukukrazula.
- Renew**, *v.t.* Ukwenza ntsha ; ukuhlaziya ; ukwalekela, to renew an effort.
- Renounce**, *v.t.* Ukulahla.
- Renovate**, *v.t.* Ukuhlaziya.
- Renown**, *n.* Udumo ; *v.t.* ukudumisa to praise.
- Rent**, to become, *v.j.* Ukukrazuka.
- Repair**, *v.t.* Ukulungisa.
- Repay**, *v.t.* Ukuhlawulela.
- Repeat**, *v.t.* Ukuphinda.
- Repel**, *v.t.* Ukugxotha ; ukusunduza.
- Repent**, *v.i.* Ukuguquka.
- Repentance**, *n.* Inguquko.
- Repine**, *v.i.* Ukukrokra.
- Replenish**, *v.t.* Ukuzalisa.
- Reply**, *v.t.* Ukuphendula, to a question ; ukusabela, to a call.
- Reply**, *n.* Impendulo.
- Report**, *n.* Imbali, narrative ; ingxelo, formal report ; ulure, rumour.
- Report**, *v.t.* Ukubika ; ukuxela.
- Repose**, *v.i.* Ukuphumla ; ukulala phantsi ; ukungqengqa.
- Reprimand**, *v.t.* Ukuthethisa ; ukusola.
- Represent**, *v.t.* Ukubonisa.
- Representation**, *n.* Isiboniso.
- Repress**, to restrain, *v.t.* Ukuthimba.
- Reproach**, *n.* Ihlazo ; indano.
- Reprobate**, *adj.* Lahliwe.
- Reproof**, *n.* Isohlwayo.
- Reptile**, *n.* Isilwana ; a worm, umsundu.
- Repulse**, *v.t.* Ukunqanda ; ukugxotha.
- Repugnant**, *adj.* Mbi ; distateful, nezotho.
- Request**, *v.t.* Ukucela ; *n.* isicelo.
- Require**, *v.t.* Ukubiza ; ukufuna.
- Require**, *v.t.* Ukubuyisela, for good ; ukuphindezela, for evil.
- Rescue**, *v.t.* Ukusindisa ; ukuhlangula ; ukunyothula.
- Resemblance**, *n.* Umfanekiso ; ukufana.
- Resemble**, *v.t.* Ukufanisa.
- Resent**, *v.t.* Ukuphindezela.

- Resentment, n.** Impindezelo.  
**Reserve, v.t.** Ukushiyela.  
**Reside, v.j.** Ukuhlala.  
**Residence, n.** Ikhaya; umzi wa-  
 kowethu, our home.  
**Resident, n.** Ummi.  
**Residue, n.** Isisalela; intsalela.  
**Resign, v.i.** Ukuzikhupha; ukun-  
 cama, to despair; ukuroxa, to  
 withdraw.  
**Resignation, n.** Ululamo; imvu-  
 me yentliziyo, in moral sense;  
 ukuroxa, from position or office.  
**Resist, v.t.** Ukwala; ukuphika,  
 to contradict.  
**Resort, a place, n.** indawo;  
 isikhundla.  
**Respect, n.** Ukubuka; ukubeka;  
 ukuhlonela.  
**Respect, n.** Imbeko; intlonelo.  
**Respectful, adj.** Nembeko, ne-  
 ntlonelo.  
**Respond, v.t.** Ukuphendula.  
**Rest, v.i.** Ukuphumla; *n.* U-  
 phumlo; ukuphumla; to give  
 rest.  
**Restless, adj.** Xhalile; ukutsho-  
 ba, from pain.  
**Restitution, n.** Isibuyiselo; i-  
 mbuyiselo.  
**Restore, v.t.** Ukubuyisa.  
**Restrain, v.t.** Ukubandeza; uku-  
 thintela.  
**Resurrection, n.** Uvuko lwaba-  
 fileyo.  
**Retain, v.t.** Ukubamba; uku-  
 gcina.  
**Retaliate, v.i.** Ukuphindezela.  
**Retch, v.i.** Ukukhonyuluka.  
**Retire, v.i.** Ukumka; ukuroxa.
- Retreat, v.i.** Ukuhlehla; uku-  
 buya ngomva.  
**Return, v.i.** Ukubuya; ukubuye-  
 la; *v.t.* ukubuyisa.  
**Reveal, v.t.** Ukutyhila; ukubona-  
 kalisa; ukuvelisa.  
**Revelation, n.** Isityhilo.  
**Revenge, v.t.** Ukuphindezela;  
*n.* impindezelo.  
**Reville, v.t.** Ukuthuka; ukugxeka.  
**Reviler, n.** Umthuki; umgxeki.  
**Revive, v.t.** Ukuxuma; ukuvusa.  
**Revolt, v.i.** Ukuvukela.  
**Revolver, n.** Umvukeli.  
**Revolve, v.i.** Ukuzingeleza.  
**Revolution, n.** Isiphendu; isa-  
 qunge.  
**Reward, v.t.** Ukuvuza; *n.* umvu-  
 zo.  
**Rib, n.** Ubambo; umhlubulo, of  
 beef.  
**Rich, adj.** Tyebile; fuyile; *n.*  
 isityebi, a rich man.  
**Riches, n.** Ubutyebi.  
**Richness, n.** Ubutyebi.  
**Riddle, n.** Iqashiso.  
**Ride, v.t.** Ukukhwela.  
**Ridge, n.** Ummango; umqolo.  
**Ridicule, v.t.** Ukuhlelekisa; uku-  
 nyelisa.  
**Ridiculous, adj.** Hlekisayo; intle-  
 kisa; intw'engento.  
**Rifle, v.t.** Ukuphanga; *n.* uhlobo  
 lompu.  
**Right, adj.** Lungile; ukuthi tse  
 straight.  
**Right-hand, n.** Isandla sokunene.  
**Righteous, adj.** Lungile; umntu  
 olungileyo, or olungisayo, a  
 righteous or good man.

- Righteousness, n.** Ubulungisa ; ukulunga.  
**Rigid, adj.** Lukhuni.  
**Rigour, n.** Ubulukhuni.  
**Rigorously, adv.** Ngobulukhuni.  
**Rind, n.** Ixolo ; ikhasi ; ubhengu.  
**Ring, n.** Inqila ; isangqa ; isazinge ; *v.t.* ukubetha intsimbi ; *v.i.* ukukhenkceza ; ukuhlokoma.  
**Ringworm, n.** Isitshanguba.  
**Rinse, v.t.** Ukukhama ; ukuxukuxa, of the mouth.  
**Riot, n.** Isaqunge ; isiphithiphithi ingxokozelo.  
**Rip open, v.t.** Ukuqhaqha ; ukutyanda.  
**Ripe, adj.** Vuthiweyo ; vuthiwe.  
**Ripen, v.t.** Ukuvuthisa.  
**Rise, v.i.** Ukuphakama ; ukuvuka ; ukunyuka ; ukufukuka, as dough ; ukuphuma, as the sun.  
**Rival, v.t.** Ukusukuzana.  
**Rivalry, n.** Uchuku ; umonelwano. incukelwano.  
**River, n.** Umlambo.  
**Rivulet, n.** Umlanjana ; intlambo ; umfula.  
**Road, n.** Indlela.  
**Roam, v.i.** Ukuhambahamba.  
**Roar, v.i.** Ukugquma, of the sea ; ukukhonya, of an animal.  
**Roast, v.t.** Ukoja ; ukosa ; ukuqina ; ukugcada ; ukutshisa, as coffee.  
**Rob, v.t.** Ukuba ; ukuphanga.  
**Robber, n.** Isela ; umphangi ; ibhada.  
**Robe, n.** Iingubo ; umnweba, of skins ; *v.t.* ukwambesa.  
**Rock, n.** Ilitye ; ulwalwa.  
**Rock-rabbit, n.** Intenetya.  
**Rock-snake, n.** Umdlambila.  
**Rocky, adj.** Namawa ; ubuwa.  
**Rod, n.** Intonga ; uswazi.  
**Rogue, n.** Itshivela.  
**Roll, n.** Umqulu ; *v.t.* ukusonga.  
**Roof, n.** Uphahla ; intungo.  
**Room, n.** Igumbi ; ikamile ; ukupha indawo, to give room.  
**Root, n.** Ingcambu ; isiqu sento, the root of the matter ; *v.t.* ukudonyula, ukuncothula, to root up.  
**Rope, n.** Intambo, ulutya.  
**Rot, v.i.** Ukubola.  
**Rotten, adj.** Bolile.  
**Rough, adj.** rabaxa ; rwexa.  
**Roughness, n.** Ukuba rabaxa.  
**Round, n.** Ngqukuva as a ball ; as a circle, isazinge.  
**Rouse, v.t.** Ukuvusa ; ukuphaphisa.  
**Rout, v.t.** Ukuchitha.  
**Rove, v.i.** Ukubhaca, ukuzula.  
**Row, n.** Ukrozo ; uluhlu ; ukulwa.  
**Row, to make a, v.t.** Ukulwa ; ukuxokozela. *v.i.* ukugweqa iphenyane, to row a boat.  
**Royal, adj.** Nobukhosi ; nobutshawe.  
**Rub, v.t.** Ukusula, to wipe ; ukutyikitya, of the eyes ; ukuphulula, to stroke.  
**Rubbish, n.** Inkunkuma ; amabibi ; izibi ; amakhathakhatha.  
**Ruddy, adj.** Bomvu, gxwalile.  
**Ruddy face, a, n.** Ubuso obubomvura.  
**Rude, adj.** Sile.  
**Rudeness, n.** Ukusa ; ukungeva.  
**Ruffian, isirovu ; isidlwambedu.**

- Rug**, *n.* Ingubo ; isabhalala.  
**Ruin**, *v.t.* Ukutshabalalisa ; ukuchitha ; *v.i.* ukonakala, morally ; ukudilika, to fall to ruins.  
**Ruin**, *n.* Ukubhujiswa ; isichithakalo.  
**Rule**, to, *v.t.* Ukulawula ; ukubusa ; *n.* umthetho ; igunya, authority.  
**Ruler**, *n.* Umlawuli ; umphathi ; an overseer or superintendent, umongameli.  
**Rumble**, of the stomach, *v.i.* ukuxuzela.  
**Rumour**, *n.* Udumasi, umingimingi ; ulure ; amare, rumours.

## S

- Sabbath**, *n.* Imini yecawa ; Icawa.  
**Sack**, *n.* Ingxowa.  
**Sacrament**, *n.* Isimiselo ; isakramente.  
 The Lord's Supper, umthendeleko weNkosi.  
 Baptism, ubhaptizo.  
**Sacrifice**, to, *v.t.* Ukunikele idini ; ukuzincama, to sacrifice one's self.  
**Sacred**, *adj.* Ngcwele.  
**Sacrilege**, *n.* Ukungcolisa okungcwele ; ukuphanga ityalike.  
**Sad**, *adj.* Lusizi.  
**Sadden**, *v.t.* Ukuhlungisa.  
**Saddle**, *n.* Isali.  
**Sadness**, *n.* Usizi, grief, sympathy.  
**Safe**, *adj.* Nqabile ; sindile.  
**Safety**, *n.* Ukunqaba ; ukugcineka.
- Sagacious**, *adj.* Lumkile.  
**Sagacity**, *n.* Ukulumka ; ubulumko.  
**Sage**, *adj.* Lumkile ; *n.* Isilumko.  
**Sail**, *n.* Iseyile.  
**Sail**, to, *v.i.* Ukuhamba kwesikhophe.  
**Sailor**, *n.* Umatiloshe.  
**Saint**, *n.* Ingcwele.  
**Sale**, *n.* Intengiso.  
**Salesman**, *n.* Umthengisi.  
**Salt**, *n.* Ityuwa.  
**Saltiness**, *n.* Ubutyuwa.  
**Saltpan**, *n.* Ichibi letyuwa.  
**Salt-water**, *n.* Amanzi etyuwa.  
**Salubrious**, *adj.* Philisayo.  
**Salutation**, *n.* Umbuliso.  
**Salute**, *v.t.* Ukubulisa.  
**Salvation**, *n.* Usindiso.  
**Salve**, *n.* Amafutha esilonda.  
**Same**, *adj.*, is expressed generally by *kwa*, with certain prefixes,

- as :—The same man, *kwalowo mntu*, *i.e.* even that man. The same horse, *kwaelo hashe*, *i.e.* even that horse. 'The same house, *kwa leyo ndlu*.
- The same time, *kwangelo xesha*.
- Sanctification**, *n.* Ingewaliso ; ubungewalisa.
- Sanctify**, *v.t.* Ukungewalisa.
- Sanctifier**, *n.* Umngewalisi.
- Sanction**, *v.t.* Ukuvumela ; *n.* invume.
- Sanctuary**, *n.* Indawo engewele.
- Sand**, *n.* Intlabathi ; isihlaba, coarse sand.
- Sandy**, *adj.* Nentlabathi ; nesihlaba.
- Sap**, *n.* Incindi, syrup ; honey.
- Sapient**, *adj.* Lumkile.
- Saping**, *n.* Igatya.
- Sarcasm**, *n.* Ubukrakra ; isiqhulo.
- Sarcastic**, *adj.* Nobukrakia.
- Sarcastically**, *adj.* Ngobukrakra ; ngokuqhula.
- Satan**, *n.* Umtyholi ; USathana.
- Satiate**, *v.t.* Ukuhluthisa.
- Satiety**, *n.* Ukuhlutha.
- Satisfy**, *v.t.* Ukwanelisa ; ukukholisa.
- Saturate**, *v.t.* Ukunethisa.
- Saturation**, *n.* Ukunetha ; ukuba manzi.
- Saucy**, to be, *v.t.* Ukusa ; ukugeza.
- Saunter**, *v.i.* Ukulibala ; ukuzilazila ; ukuhiliza, ukuzula, to wander about.
- Savage**, *n.* Umntu osekrwada.
- Savage**, *adj.* Krwada, *i.e.* in manners.
- Savageness**, *n.* Ubukrwada.
- Save**, *v.t.* Ukusindisa ; ukusiza.
- Saviour**, *n.* UMsindisi.
- Savour**, *n.* Incasa ; isongo.
- Savoury**, *adj.* Nencasa.
- Saw**, *n.* Isara.
- Saw**, *v.t.* Ukusara.
- Say**, *v.i.* Ukutsho ; ukuxela.
- Saying**, *n.* Ukutsho ; isithetho.
- Scab**, *n.* Ukhoko ; ukhwekhwe.
- Scald**, *v.t.* Ukutshisa ngamanzi ashushu.
- Scale**, of a fish, *n.* Amakhwethu ; intsente.
- Scales**, a pair of, *n.* Umlingo isikali.
- Scamp**, *n.* Itshinitshini ; *v.t.* ukutshiniza.
- Scandal**, *n.* Ihlazo.
- Scandalize**, *v.t.* Ukuhleba ; ukungecolisa omnye.
- Scandalous**, *adj.* Nehlazo ; hla-zekileyo.
- Scar**, *n.* Isiphako ; umda.
- Scarce**, *adj.* Nqabile ; dear.
- Scarcity**, *n.* Intswelo ; indlala, of food.
- Scarcely**, *adv.* Cebetshu, used thus, scarcely escaped in danger.
- Scare**, *v.t.* Ukoyikisa ; ukothusa ; ukuphekuza.
- Scarlet**, *adj.* Ngqomtela ; bomvu.
- Scatter**, *v.t.* Ukusasaza ; ukuchithachitha.
- Scent**, *n.* Ivumba ; ufutha.
- Sceptic**, *n.* Ongakholwayo.
- Scholar**, *n.* Umfundi.
- School**, *n.* Isikolo.
- Schoolhouse**, *n.* Indlu yesikolo
- Schoolmaster**, *n.* Umfundisi wosapho.
- Scissors**, *n.* Isikele.
- Scoop**, *n.* Umcephe.

- Scoop**, *v.t.* Ukukha ; ukuphanda ; ukugrumba.
- Scorch**, *v.t.* Ukurawula ; ukugcada.
- Scorn**, *v.t.* Ukugxeka ; ukunyelisa.
- Scorner**, *n.* Umgxeki.
- Scorpion**, *n.* Unomadudwane.
- Scoundrel**, *n.* Ibhedengu.
- Scour**, *v.t.* Ukukhuhla.
- Scourge**, *n.* Iziniya ; *v.t.* ukutyakatya.
- Scout**, *n.* Umlindi ; ivarasha ; intlola.
- Scout**, to, *v.t.* Ukuhlola ; ukuvarasha.
- Scowl**, *v.i.* Ukushwacuzo.
- Scrag**, *n.* Ubhityo.
- Scramble**, *v.t.* Ukudywida ; ukuphangelana.
- Scrape**, *v.t.* Ukukrwela ; ukuphala, of a hide or pot ; ukuphanda, as a hen *n.* as ukuphanda.
- Scratch**, *v.t.* Ukonwaya ; ukukrwela ; ukuphanda, scratch out.
- Scream**, *v.i.* Ukukhala ; ukulila ; *n.* isikhalo.
- Screech**, *v.i.* Ukukhala kabukhali.
- Screen**, *v.t.* Ukukhusela.
- Scribe**, *n.* Umbhali.
- Scrub**, *v.i.* Ukukhuhla ; ukukolobha.
- Scruple**, *v.i.* Ukuthandabuza ; *n.* amathidala, scruples.
- Scrutinize**, *v.t.* Ukucedulula ; ukuphicotha.
- Scum**, *n.* Ingwebu.
- Scurf**, *n.* Inkwethu.
- Scurvy**, *n.* Ukhwekhwe.
- Sea**, *n.* Ulwandle ; ulwagcibe, sea coast ; unxweme, sea shore.
- Seal**, *v.t.* Ukutywina ; ukuncamathisela.
- Seam**, *n.* Umthungo.
- Seaman**, *n.* Umatoloshe.
- Sear**, *v.t.* Ukutshisa.
- Search**, *v.t.* Ukufuna ; ukuphe-ngulula.
- Season**, *n.* Umzuzu ; ixeshana.
- Spring, intloko hlaza.
- Summer, ihlobo.
- Autumn, ukwindla.
- Winter, ubusika.
- Seat**, *n.* Isihlalo.
- Secede**, *v.t.* Ukwahluka ; ukwahlukana.
- Seceder**, *n.* Umahluki.
- Second**, *n.* Umzuzwana, *adj.* wesibini ; second day, umhla wesibini.
- Secondly**, *adv.* Ngokwesibini.
- Secret**, *n.* Imfihlakalo ; imfihlo ; *v.t.* ukufihla, to hide.
- Secretary**, *n.* Umbhali ; unobhala ; ingxangxosi, secretary bird.
- Secretly**, *adj.* Ngasese ; ngokufihlakeleyo.
- Section**, *n.* Isahlulo.
- Secure**, *adj.* Gcinckile ; *v.t.* ukulondoloza ; ukunqaba ; ukugcina.
- Sediment**, *n.* Intlenga ; imula, of coffee ; amashiqo, of kafir beer.
- Sedition**, *n.* Ukuvukela ulawulo.
- Seduce**, *v.t.* Ukuhilizisa ; ukulahlekisa ; ukungcolisa.
- Seduction**, *n.* Ukuhenyuzisa inkazana.
- See**, *v.t.* Ukubona ; ukukhangela.
- See**, *interj.* Bona ! Khangela !
- Seed**, *n.* Imbewu ; imbali, of plants.
- Seek**, *v.t.* Ukufuna.
- Seeker**, *n.* Umfuni.

- Seem**, *v.j.* Ukungathi; ukubonakala ngathi.
- Seemingly**, *adj.* Ngokungathi.
- Seen, to be**, *v.j. pass.* Ukubonwa.
- Seize**, *v.t.* Ukubamba; ukuthi xhamfu; ukuthi xhiphu.
- Seizure**, *n.* Ukuqubula; ukuphanga, illegal seizure.
- Select**, *v.t.* Ukukhetha; ukunyula.
- Selection**, *n.* Unyulo; ubalulo; ukukhetha.
- Self**, *pron.* Isiqu.  
Ngokwam, myself;  
ngokwakho, yourself;  
ngokwakhe, him, or himself;  
and so on according to the class of noun; ngokwalo, ngokwayo, ngokwaso, etc.
- Selfish**, *adj.* Zingcayo; ozithandela okwakhe, one who loves or looks after himself; nolunya.
- Selfwill**, *n.* Iinkani.
- Selfwilled person**. Umntu oneenkani; uphikaphele.
- Sell**, *v.t.* Ukuthengisa; ukufunisa; to take about for sale.
- Seller**, *n.* Umthengisi.
- Send**, *v.t.* Ukuthuma, send to.  
Ukubuyisa, send back;  
ukugodusa, to send home;  
ukumkisa, ukugxotha, to send away.
- Sense**, *n.* Ingqondo.
- Sensible**, *adj.* Nengqondo; vakalayo, heard or felt.
- Sensitive**, *adj.* Nolwavela.
- Sensual**, *adj.* Kwenyama; inkano yenyama, sensual desires.
- Sent, to be**, *v.t. pass.* Ukuthunywa.
- Sentinel**, *n.* Umlindi; ivarasha.
- Separate**, *v.t.* Ukwahlula; ukukhetha.
- Separate**, *adj.* Ahlukile.
- Sermon**, *n.* Intshumayelo.
- Serpent**, *n.* Inyoka.
- Servant**, *n.* Isicaka; umkhonzi.
- Serve**, *v.t.* Ukukhonza.
- Service**, *n.* Inkonzo; umsebenzi.
- Serviceable**, *adj.* Nomsebenzi; into enomsebenzi, a serviceable thing.
- Set**, *v.t.* Ukubeka, to put.  
Ukukhulula, to set free;  
ukuthiya, to set a trap;  
ukufunza, to set dogs at game;  
ukutshisa, to set fire to;  
ukuhlabela, to set a tune;  
ukwahlula, to set apart;  
ukulungisa, to set in order;  
ukumisa, to set up;  
ukutshona, setting of the sun.
- Settle**, *v.t.* Ukuzinza, to fix a material object; ukufeza, to finish or complete a matter.
- Severe**, *adj.* Lukhuni.
- Severely**, *adj.* Kalukhuni.
- Sew**, *v.t.* Ukuthunga.
- Sewer**, *n.* Umthungi.
- Shackle**, *v.t.* Ukukhonkxa.
- Shade**, *n.* Ithunzi; isithunzi; umthunzi, of a tree.
- Shades**, *n.* Amathunzi.
- Shadow**, *n.* Isithunzi.
- Shady**, *adj.* Nethunzi; nomthunzi.
- Shaft**, *n.* Utolo, arrow; umphini, handle.
- Shake**, *v.t.* Ukushukuma; ukuzamazama; ukushukumisa; ukuvuthulula, to shake a cloth free of dust;

- ukubungezela, wagging of a dog's tail ;  
 ukuhlukuhla, of a calabash ;  
 ukungcangazela, ukunkwantya, to tremble for fear ;  
 ukubulisa, to great ro shake hands.
- Shaken, to be, v.t.** Ukuzanyanyiswa.
- Shaky, to be, v.j.** Ukuxengaxenga.
- Shallot, n.** Itswele.
- Shallow, adj.** Sidibi ; umlambo osidibi, a shallow river ; isidibi, a shallow place.
- Sham, v.t.** Ukuzenzisa ; ukukhohlisa ; *n.* inkohliso.
- Shame, n.** ihlazo ; *v.t.* ukuhlazisa ; ukubanga iintloni.
- Shamefaced, adj.** Neentloni ; hlonipha.
- Shameful, adj.** Hlazekileyo.
- Shameless, adj.** Ngenantloni ; oswele iintloni.
- Shamfight, n.** Ukudlala, ukulingisana.
- Shanty, n.** Umnquba ; iphempe.
- Shape, n.** Isimo ; ukumila ; *v.t.* ukwenza ; ukuyila, to sketch, outline, mark out.
- Shapeless, adj.** Ngenasimo ; ngaxelinto.
- Share, n.** Isabelo ; isahlulo ; *v.t.* ukwabcla.
- Sharp, adj.** Bukhali ; tsolo ; ubengu, very fine edge, ngameva, as a thorn.
- Sharpen, v.t.** Ukulola, to grind ; ukubaza, by cutting ; ukuqandula, used of a grinding stone.
- Shatter, v.t.** Ukutyumza ; ukuthi vithi ; ukutyoboza.
- Shave, to, v.t.** Ukuceba ; ukuguya ; ukunquthula.
- Shaver, n.** Umchebi ; umnquthuli.
- Shavings, n.** Inkwela.
- Sheaf, n.** Isithungu.
- Shear, v.t.** Ukuceba, of sheep.
- Shearer, n.** Umchebi.
- Shears, n.** Isikele sokuceba.
- Sheath, n.** Isixhobo ; umphongolo.
- Shed, n.** Ikhusele ; iphempe ; *v.t.* ukulila, shed tears.  
 ukophisa, blood.  
 ukuphalaza, to spill.
- Sheep, n.** Iguha ; imvu.
- Shelf, n.** Ithala
- Shell, n.** Iqokobhe ; ingqongqo, armband of seashells.
- Shelter, v.t.** Ukukhusela ; *n.* isifulelo ; umthunzi.
- Shelve, v.t.** Ukuxhoma ethaleni.
- Shepherd, n.** Umalusi weegu-ha.
- Shield, n.** Ikhaka ; *v.t.* ukulondo-loza ; ukukhusela.
- Shilling, n.** Isheleni.
- Shin bone, n.** Umbala ; imbande.
- Shine, v.j.** Ukukhanya ; ukubungezela, to glitter.
- Ship, n.** Inqanawe ; isikhephe.
- Shiver, v.i.** Ukungcangazela ; ukuqhaq hazela, from cold.
- Shoe, n.** Isihlangu.
- Shoemaker, n.** Umenzi wezihlangu.
- Shoot, n.** Ihlumelo ; isithole.
- Shoot, to, v.t.** Ukudubula.
- Shop, n.** Ivenkile.
- Shopkeeper, n.** Umnini-venkile.
- Shopman, n.** Umthengeli wevenkile.
- Shore, n.** Unxweme.



- Short**, *adv.* Futshane ; isithunyana, of distance.  
*ukuswela* ; *v.i.*, to be short of.
- Shorten**, *v.t.* Ukufinyeza.
- Shortly**, *adv.* Kamsinya, in time ; ngokufutshane, briefly.
- Shortness**, *n.* Ubufutshane.
- Shot**, *n.* Uhlwaya, pellets ; indubuli, a good shot.
- Shoulder**, *n.* Igxalaba ; isiphanga, shoulder-blade.
- Shout**, *v.i.* Ukumemeza ; ukukhwaza : ukubhomboloza, loudly.
- Shove**, *v.t.* Ukusunduza ; ukutyhala.
- Shovel**, *n.* Umhlakulo.
- Show**, *v.t.* Ukubonisa ; ukwalthisa ; *n.* umboniso.
- Shower**, *n.* Isiphango ; imvula.
- Shrewd**, *adj.* Lumkile ; nobuqili.
- Shrewd person**, *n.* Iqili.
- Shriek**, *v.i.* Ukukhala ; *n.* isikhalo.
- Shrink**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukushwabana ; ukuroxa, to shrink back.
- Shrub**, *n.* Ityholo ; isicithi.
- Shudder**, *v.i.* Ukuhlasimla.
- Shun**, *v.t.* Ukuphepha ; ukucezela.
- Shut**, *v.t.* Ukuvala ; a door ; ukucika, a lid.
- Shut**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukuvingca, to close an opening ; ukuvingcela to shut in ; ukucima, to shut the eyes.
- Shy**, *adj.* Ndwebile ; neentloni. modest.
- Shyness**, *n.* By *v.i.* Ukuba neentloni.
- Sick**, *adj.* Gulayo ; *n.* ofayo, a sick person.
- Sickness**, *n.* Isifo.
- Sickle**, *n.* Isekile ; irengqa.
- Side**, *adj.* Icala ;
- Ikhohlo or ukhohlo, left side  
 ukunene, right side.
- Side**, *on this.* Nganeno.
- Side**, *on the other.* Ngapheheya.
- Sideways**, *adj.* Ngecala.
- Sift**, *v.t.* Ukuhlungula.
- Sigh**, *to*, *v.i.* Ukuncwina ; *n.* isingqala, grief, heaviness of spirit
- Sight**, *n.* Isibonakalo, view, appearance ; ukubona vision, power of seeing ; umbono.
- Sign**, *v.t.* Ukubhala igama, to write one's name ; *n.* uphawu, a mark ; umqondiso, token, proof.
- Signal**, *n.* Isalathiso.
- Signature**, *n.* Umbhalo ; igama elibhaliweyo.
- Significant**, *adj.* Balulekile.
- Signify**, *v.t.* Ukwalatha ; ukubonakalisa.
- Silence**, *n.* Ukuthi tu ; ukuthi cwaka ; ukuzola, stillness in the air.
- Silent**, *be*, *v.j.* Yithi tu ! Yithi cwaka.
- Silliness**, *n.* Ubuhiba.
- Silly**, *person*, *a*, *n.* Isihiba.
- Silver**, *n.* Isilivere.
- Similar**, *adj.* Efanayo.
- Similarity**, *n.* Ukufana.
- Simple**, *adj.* Lula, easy ; *n.* isiyatha, a simple-minded person.
- Simpleton**, *n.* Isiphukuphuku ; isiyatha.
- Simplify**, *v.t.* Ukwenza lula ; ukucacisa.
- Simulate**, *v.t.* Ukuzenzisa.
- Simultaneously**, *adj.* Kunye ; ngaxanye.
- Sin**, *n.* Isono.
- Since**, *adv.* Kususela oko, from that time ; njengokuba, because

## XHOSA VOCABULARY

- as njengokuba kunjalo, since it is so.
- Sincere**, *adj.* Nyanisekileyo ; wenene.
- Sincerely**, *adv.* Ngenene ; ngenyaniso.
- Sincerity**, Ubunyaniso.
- Sinew**, *n.* Umsipha.
- Sinful**, *adj.* Nesono ; yonile ; ngendawo.
- Sinfully**, *adv.* Ngokona.
- Sing**, *v.t.* Ukuvuma.
- Singe**, *a.t.* Ukurawula.
- Singer**, *n.* Unculi ; imvumi, a good singer.
- Singing**, *n.* Ukucula.
- Single**, *n.* Edwa ; odwa etc. ; *n.* isoka, a single man ; intombi, a single woman.
- Single out, to**, Ukuthetha.
- Sink**, *v.j.* Ukuzika ; ukutshona ; ukuntywila, into water.
- ainless**, *n.* Ngenasono ; msulwa, innocent.
- Sinner**, *n.* Umoni.
- Sip**, *v.t.* Ukurapula ; ukuphuza, ukuphunga.
- Sister**, *n.* Udade.  
Udade wethu, my sister ;  
udade wenu, your sister ;  
udade wabo, his sister.
- Sit**, *v.i.* Ukuhlala.
- Site**, *n.* Isiza, of a house ; inxowa, of deserted kraal.
- Sitting**, *n.* Ukuhlala.
- Situation**, *n.* Isihlalo.
- Size**, *n.* Ubukhulu.
- Skeleton**, *n.* Ubugoxo ; ugoro.
- Skilful**, *adj.* Ligcisa ; oneminwe ; *n.* igcisa, a skilful man.
- Skill**, *n.* Ubugcisa ; ubulumko.
- Skim**, *v.t.* Ukongula ; ukugwen-gula.
- Skin**, *n.* Ulusu ; isikhumba, a hide.
- Skip**, *v.t.* Ukuqakatha ; ukudloba.
- Skull**, *n.* Inkankane ; ukhakayi, human skull.
- Sky**, *n.* Isibhakabhaka ; izulu.
- Slack**, *adj.* Ngxengengxenge.
- Slacken**, *v.t.* Ukwenza ngxengengxenge.
- Slackness**, *n.* Ubungxengengxenge.
- Slander**, *v.t.* Ukuhleba ; *n.* intlebo ; intlebwane.
- Slanderer**, *n.* Umhlebi ; intlebi.
- Slap**, *v.t.* Ukumpakaza ; ukutywaraza ; *n.* impama.
- Slate**, *n.* Ilitye lokubhala ; isileti.
- Slaughter**, *v.t.* Ukuxhela ; ukubulala ; ukuhlaba ; *n.* umxheli, slaughterer.
- Slave**, *n.* Ikhoboka.
- Slay**, *v.t.* Ukubulala.
- Sledge**, *n.* Isileyi ; isando esikhulu, sledge hammer.
- Sleek**, *adj.* Gudile ; tyebile.
- Sleep**, *v.t.* Ukulala ; *n.* umlali, sleeper.
- Sleepy**, *adj.* Ozela ; ndiyozela, I am sleepy.
- Sleeve**, *n.* Umkhono wengubo.
- Slice**, *n.* Iceba.
- Slide**, *v.j.* Ukutyibilika.
- Slight**, *v.t.* Ukudela ; ukucekisa.
- Silly**, *adv.* Ngobunyoka, like a snake.
- Sling**, *n.* Inkwitshi, isisawulo.
- Slippery**, *adj.* Mtyibilizi ; buthelezi.
- Slope**, *n.* Ithambeka.
- Sloth**, *n.* Ubuvila ; ukudangala.
- Slough**, *n.* Umgxobhozo.

- Sloven**, *n.* Ivila; ixumbululu; ivilakazi, slut.
- Slovenliness**, *n.* Ubuxumbululu.
- Slow**, *adj.* Cothisa.
- Slowly**, *adv.* Ngokucotha.
- Sluggard**, *n.* Ivila; inqenera.
- Slumber**, *v.i.* Ukozela.
- Slyness**, *n.* Unyebilezo.
- Small**, *adj.* Ncinane.
- Smallness**, *n.* Ubuncinane.
- Smart**, *adj.* Bukhali; khaliphile.
- Smash**, *v.t.* Ukutyumza, to bruise.
- Smear**, *v.t.* Ukudyobha; ukusinda.
- Smell**, *v.t.* Ukunuka; also used for smelling out by witchdoctor; ukujoja, sniff at; ukusezela.
- Smile**, *v.i.* Ukuncuma.
- Smite**, *v.t.* Ukubetha.
- Smith**, *n.* Umkhandi; umkhandi webhekile, tinsmith.
- Smoke**, *n.* Umsi; ukutshaya, to smoke tobacco; ukuqhumisa, to cause smoke, to fumigate.
- Smoker**, *n.* Intshayi.
- Smooth**, *adj.* Gudile; buthelezi.
- Smoothly**, *adv.* Ngokugudileyo.
- Smother**, *v.t.* Ukufuthanisela.
- Snail**, *n.* Inkumba.
- Snap**, to *v.t.* Ukuthi daphu; ukuthi qhivu; ukubetha iminwe, to snap the fingers.
- Snare**, *n.* Umgibe.
- Snarl**, *v.i.* Ukuvungama.
- Snatch**, *v.t.* Ukuxwila.
- Sneak**, *v.i.* Ukukhasela; ukunyebeleza.
- Sneer**, *v.i.* Ukuhlelisa; ukusinekela.
- Sneeze**, *v.i.* Ukuthimla.
- Sneezewood**, *n.* Umthathi.
- Sniff**, to *v.t.* ukujoja.
- Snore**, *v.i.* Ukuirona.
- Snort**, *v.i.* Ukubetha ithatha, like a horse; ukuthimla, of other animals.
- Snow**, *n.* Ikhephu.
- Snuff**, *n.* Igwada.
- So**, *adj.* Njalo; kunjalo, it is so; ukutsho, to say so.
- So much**, Kangaka.
- Soak**, *v.t.* Ukuba manzi; ukunetha by rain.
- Soap**, *n.* Isepha.
- Sober**, *adj.* Nengqondo; qabukile, to become sober.
- Society**, *n.* Ubudlelana.
- Socket**, *n.* Isingxobo, a space, a receptacle, case.
- Sodden**, *v.i.* Ukuba dubhudubhu; fumile, damp.
- Soft**, *adj.* Thamlele; *n.* imfumanga, soft clothing.
- Soften**, *v.t.* Ukuthambisa; ukusuka, to soften a skin.
- Softness**, *n.* Ukuthamba.
- Soil**, *n.* Umhlaba; *v.t.* ukudyo-bha.
- Soiled**, to be, *v.t.* Ukudyoheka.
- Sojourn**, *v.i.* Ukuhlala umzuzwana; ukuphambukela.
- Sojourn**, a, *n.* Intlalo.
- Solace**, *v.t.* Ukuthuthuzela; *n.* intuthuzelo.
- Sold**, *p.p.* Thengisiwe.
- Soldier**, *n.* Isoldati; *plur.* amasoldati.
- Solicit**, *v.t.* Ukucela.
- Solid**, *adj.* Jiyile, to become thick or stiff; hlangeneyo, joined or compacted.
- Soluble**, *adj.* Nyibilikayo.

- Solitary**, *adj.* Edwa; nesizungu,<sup>1</sup> feeling lonely.
- Solve, explain**, *v.t.* Ukuchaza, to explain, to make clear; ukucedulula, to loosen or unfold.
- Some**, *adj.* Inxenye; inxalenye, a portion.
- Somebody**, *n.* Ubani; uthile; umntu othile, some one.
- Somersault**, *n.* Uqukulubhoto.
- Something**, *n.* Into ethile; into.
- Sometimes**, *adv.* Ngamanye amaxesha; maxa wambi.
- Sometime ago**, Mzuzu.
- Son**, *n.* Unyana.
- Son-in-law**, *n.* Umyeni went mbi.
- Song**, *n.* Ingoma; iculo.
- Sonship**, *n.* Ubunyana.
- Soon**, *adv.* Kamsinya; msinya.
- Soot**, *n.* Umle, on the roof of a hut; umsizi, on pots.
- Soothe**, *v.t.* Ukuthuthuzela; ukuxolisa.
- Sooty**, *adj.* Nomle.
- Sorcerer**, *n.* Igqwira; umthakathi; inkewu, one suspected of bewitching.
- Sorcery**, *n.* Ubugqwira.
- Sordid**, *adj.* Ngcolile, *i.e.* foul; ovimbayo, stinky; onolunya.
- Sore**, *n.* Isilonda; amavila, in the mouths of children; *adj.* nobuhlungu.
- Soreness**, *n.* Ubuhlungu.
- Sorrow**, *n.* Usizi; ukukhedama; ukudakumba, depression.
- Sorrow, to**, *v.j.* Ukubethwa lusizi.
- Sorrowful**, *adj.* Nosizi; khedamile.
- Sorry**, *adj.* Lusizi; ndilusizi ngawe, I am sorry for you.
- Sort**, *n.* Uhlobo.
- Sot**, Inxila; ihiya; udwayi.
- Soul**, *n.* Umphefumlo; *i.e.* breath.
- Sound**, *n.* Intlokoma; isandi; *v.i.* ukuhlokoma; *v.t.* ukubhlokomisa.
- Soup**, *n.* Umhluzi, *i.e.* broth; uwuca, thin porridge.
- Sour**, *adj.* Muncu; ukujala, to make a sour face, to frown.
- Souvenir**, *n.* Isikhumbuzo.
- Sovereign**, *n.* Umlawuli; uKumkani; inkosi; iponti, twenty shillings.
- Sow**, *n.* Ihangukazi.
- Sow**, *v.t.* Ukuhlwayela; ukukhubula, to sow over again.
- Sower**, *n.* Umhlwayeli.
- Space**, *n.* Isithuba.
- Spade**, *n.* Umhlabulo.
- Span**, *n.* Isipani, of oxen.
- Span, in to**, *v.t.* Ukubopha.
- Span out**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukukhulula.
- Spar**, *n.* Isibonda; umvalo; umqadi.
- Spare**, *adj.* Ngenasiqu.
- Spare, to**, *v.t.* Ukugcinakalisa.
- Spark**, *n.* Intlantsi.
- Sparkle**, *v.i.* Ukukhazimla; ukumenyenzela; ukubengezela.
- Sparrow**, *n.* Inqatyana.
- Speak**, *v.i.* Ukuthetha; ukuthi, to say.
- Spear**, *n.* Ikrele, or short assegai, also sword.
- Species**, *n.* Uhlobo.
- Specimen**, *n.* Umlinganiselo; umfanekiselo, likeness.
- Speck**, *n.* Ibalana; ibala.
- Speckled**, *adj.* rwexa; rangaranga.

- Spectacles**, *n.* Iintsimbi zamehlo.  
**Spectacle**, *n.* Into yokubonelwa.  
**Spectator**, *n.* Umboneli.  
**Speech**, *n.* Intetho.  
**Speed**, *n.* Amendu.  
**Speed**, *to, v.i.* Ukukhawuleza; *adv.* ngokukhawuleza, speedily.  
**Spell**, *v.t.* Ukupelisha; ukupela.  
**Spew**, *v.t.* Ukuhlanza; ukukhupha.  
**Spider**, *n.* Isigcawu.  
**Spider's web**, *n.* Indlu yesigcawu.  
**Spill**, *v.t.* Ukuphalaza.  
**Spinal narrow**, *n.* Umnqonqo.  
**Spine**, *n.* Umqolo.  
**Spirit**, *n.* Umoya; uMoya Oyingcwele. Holy Spirit; iminyanya, spirits of the dead; imishologu, evil spirits.  
**Spit**, *v.t.* Ukutshica.  
**Spite**, *n.* Inzondo; inqala.  
**Spiteful**, *adj.* Nenzondo; nenqala.  
**Spittle**, *n.* Amathe.  
**Splash**, *to, v.t.* Ukutshiza.  
**Spleen**, *n.* Udakada; ubende; umsindo, anger.  
**Splendid**, *adj.* Hle; a splendid opportunity, ithuba, clihle.  
**Splendidly**, *adv.* Kakuhle.  
**Splendour**, *n.* Ubukhazikhazi.  
**Splice**, *v.t.* Ukuhlomela intambo; ukubopha.  
**Splinter**, *n.* Iceba; *plur.* amaceba.  
**Split**, *v.t.* Ukucanda, as wood; ukukrazula, as cloth.  
**Spoil**, *v.t.* Ukona; ukonakalisa; ukuphanga, to plunder.  
**Spoke**, *n.* Isipeki.  
**Spontaneously**, *adv.* Ngokwayo; ukuhluma ngokwayo, to grow spontaneously.  
**Spoon**, *n.* Igxebeka; iccphc.  
**Sport**, *n.* Umdlalo; *v.i.* ukudlala, of animals.  
**Sportsman**, *n.* Umzingeli.  
**Spot**, *n.* Ibala; *plur.* amabala.  
**Spotless**, *adj.* Ngenabala; cacileyo, clear.  
**Spout**, *n.* Ijelo.  
**Sprain**, *to, v.t.* Ukukruna; ukukruneka, to be sprained.  
**Spread**, *v.t.* Ukwandlala; ukwaneka; ukunaba, to stretch.  
**Sprig**, *n.* Igatya; ihlumelo.  
**Spring**, *v.i.* Ukuntshula, to germinate; ukuhluma; ukutsiba, to leap.  
**Spring, season**, *n.* Intloko hlaza; umthombo, of water.  
**Springbuck**, *n.* Ibhadi.  
**Sprinkle**, *v.t.* Ukufefa, with water; ukumvumvuzela, with salt or pepper.  
**Spout**, *v.i.* (See spring).  
**Spur**, *n.* Isiporo, for horses; of a cock, ijingxeba.  
**Spurn**, *v.t.* Ukudela; ukucekisa.  
**Spy**, *n.* Intlola; *v.t.* ukuhlola.  
**Squander**, *v.t.* Ukuchitha; uku-feketha ngobutyebi.  
**Squeak**, *v.i.* Ukutswina.  
**Squeeze**, *v.t.* Ukubandezela; ukucudisa; ukukhama, to wring out.  
**Squinting person**, *n.* Igxwemu.  
**Stab**, *v.t.* Ukugwaza; ukuhlaba.  
**Stability**, *n.* Ukuqina.  
**Stable**, *n.* Isitali.  
**Staff**, *n.* Umsimelelo.

- Stag**, *n.* Inyamakazi; ixhama, hartebeste.
- Stagger**, *v.t.i.* Ukugxadazela; ukubhadaza.
- Stain**, *n.* Isisihla.
- Stake**, *n.* Isibonda; ulugxa.
- Stale**, *adj.* Ngundile, of bread.
- Stallion**, *n.* Inkunzi yehashe.
- Stammer**, *v.t.* Ukuthintitha; *n.* a stammerer, ithintitha.
- Stamp**, *n.* Isitampu, postal stamp; *v.t.* ukushicilela.
- Stand**, *v.i.* Ukuma; ukuthi bhuxe, to stand firmly; ukunyamezela, to endure.
- Standard**, *n.* Isilinganiselo; umfuziselo.
- Star**, *n.* Inkwenkwezi.
- Stare**, *v.i.* Ukujonga; ukondela.
- Start back**, to, *v.i.* Ukothuka; ukuqala into, to begin a thing; ukunduluka, to start on a journey.
- Startle**, to, *v.t.* Ukothusa; ukothuswa, to be startled.
- Starvation**, *n.* Ukufa yindlala.
- Starve**, *v.i.* Ukuba nendlala, to have famine; ukubulala nendlala, to starve a person.
- State**, *n.* Isimo, condition, quality; ilizwe, country; ukuma kwezinto, state of things.
- Statement**, *n.* Ingxelo; inkcazelo; ukwenza ingxelo, to make a statement.
- Station**, *n.* Umzi; isikolo, mission-station; isitishi, railway station.
- Statue**, *n.* Umfanekiso.
- Statute**, *n.* Umthetho.
- Stay**, *v.i.* Ukuhlala; ndihlala apha, I am staying here.
- Steadfast**, *adj.* Qinile.
- Steadfastness**, *n.* Ukuqinisa.
- Steal**, *v.t.* Ukuba; ububhuru, stealing cattle for slaughtering; ukunyimbinya, stealing crops in times of war; ukubhada.
- Stealer**, *n.* Isela.
- Stealthily**, *adj.* Ngokuthwethwa; ngokunyongoba; ngokucotha.
- Steam**, *n.* Umphunga.
- Steamer**, *n.* Usitemele.
- Steed**, *n.* Ihashe.
- Steep**, *adj.* Mqengqelezi.
- Stench**, *n.* Ivumba; ufutha; ubura; intshegqina, a strong, disagreeable smell.
- Step**, *n.* Inyathelo; ibanga; unyawo, one pace; isingqi, sound of steps.
- Step**, to, *v.i.* Ukunyathela.
- Steps**, *n.* Amanyathelo; amabanga.
- Stern**, *adj.* Lukhuni.
- Sternness**, Nolunya; ubugwangqagwangqa.
- Stick**, *n.* Uluthi; intonga; *v.i.* ukuncamathela, to stick to; ukuxinga, to stick fast.
- Sticky**, to be, *adj.* Ukuba luncanathi.
- Stiff**, *adj.* Lukhuni; ukuthi nkqi; ukujiya, as porridge.
- Stifle**, *v.t.* Ukufuthaniselela; ukufuthelana, to be stifled.
- Still**, to be, *adj.* Ukuthi cwaka; ukuzola.
- Stimulate**, *v.t.* Ukukhaliphisa.

- Sting**, *n.* Ulamvila, of a bee; *v.t.* ukusuzela, to sting; ukutshisa or ukudla, as nettles.
- Stingy**, *adj.* Vimbayo; *n.* ivimba, a stingy person.
- Stink**, *v.t.* Ukunuka; ukunukisa, to cause to stink.
- Stipulate**, *v.t.* Ukuvumelana.
- Stir**, *v.j.* Ukushukuma; ukuziduba, to bestir one's self about a matter; ukukhwezela, to stir a fire; ukushukumisa, to move, or shake.
- Stirrup**, *n.* Istibili.
- Stitch**, *n.* Umthungo; iqondo; ihlaba, sharp pain in the side.
- Stitch**, to, sew, *v.t.* Ukuthunga.
- Stock**, *n.* Impahla; umhlambi; impahla yevenkile, stock in trade.
- Stockings**, *n.* Ikawusi ezinde.
- Stomach**, *n.* Isisu; I have a stomach ache, ndinesisu.
- Stone**, *n.* Ilitye.
- Stool**, *n.* Isitulo; isihlalo.
- Stoop**, *v.j.* Ukuthoba; ukugoba.
- Stop**, *v.i.* Ukuma; ukunqumama.
- Stopper**, *n.* Isivumbo.
- Store**, *n.* Isitora; uvimba; ivenkile.
- Storm**, *n.* Isaqhwithi; isichotho; isiphango.
- Story**, *n.* Imbali.
- Stout, strong, heavy**, *adj.* Ngqingqwa.
- Straddle**, *v.i.* Ukungxabalaza.
- Straight**, *adj.* Tse; ukuthi ngqo; *v.i.* to go straight, ukuthi gca.
- Strain**, *v.t.* Ukuhluza; ukukhonyuluka, as in vomiting.
- Strainer**, *n.* Intluzo.
- Stranger**, *n.* Owasemzini; a traveller, umntu wasemzini.
- Strangle**, *v.t.* Ukukrwitsha.
- Strap**, *n.* Ibanti, *v.t.* ukubopha ngebhanti, to strap up.
- Straw**, *n.* Iindiza zengqolowa.
- Stray**, *v.j.* Ukulahleka.
- Strayed**, *adj.* Lahlekile.
- Stream**, *n.* Umsinga.
- Streamlet**, *n.* Umfulana; umsingana
- Street**, *n.* Isitrato.
- Strength**, *n.* Amandla.
- Strengthen**, *v.t.* Ukomeleza; ukuqinisa.
- Strew**, *v.t.* Ukusasaza.
- Stricture**, *n.* Isisolo; isikhalazo ngomnye umntu.
- Stride**, *v.i.* Ukugxadaza.
- Strife**, *n.* Iinkani; ibango.
- Strike**, *v.t.* Ukubetha; ukulahla umsebenzi ngezikhhalazo, to strike work.
- Striker**, *n.* Umbethi.
- String**, *n.* Umtya; usinga.
- Strip**, to, *v.t.* Ukuhlubula.
- Stripe**, *n.* Umvumbo.
- Stripling**, *n.* Inkwenkwana.
- Strive**, *v.j.* Ukuzama.
- Stroke**, to, *v.t.* Ukuphulula.
- Stroke**, *n.* Umgca, lines on paper or otherwise; umvumbo, a stripe when beaten.
- Strong**, *adj.* Namandla.
- Stronghold**, *n.* Inqaba.
- Strongly**, *adv.* Ngamandla.
- Structure**, *n.* Isakhiwo.
- Struggle**, *n.* Umzamo; umgudu; *v.j.* ukuzama; ukugungqa.
- Student**, *n.* Umfundi.
- Study**, *v.t.* Ukufunda.

- Stuff**, *v.t.* Ukuhlohla; ukungxala.
- Stumble, to**, *v.t.* Ukukhubeka; ukukhubekisa, to cause to stumble.
- Stumbling-block**, *n.* Isikhubekiso; isixakaniso.
- Stump**, *n.* Isiphunzi; isigodo; isikhuni, a log.
- Stupefy**, *v.t.* Ukumathisa.
- Stupid**, *adj.* Isidenge, a foolish or stupid person.
- Stupidity**, *n.* Ubuyatha; ubudenge.
- Stutter**, *v.i.* Ukuthintitha.
- Sty**, *n.* Indlu yehangu; ihoko.
- Subdue**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa; ukuqoba.
- Subject**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa; *n.* Ophantsi kolawulo lomnye, one who is under; umcimbi, matter of business.
- Subjugate**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa.
- Submerge**, *v.t.* Ukuntywilisa.
- Submissively**, *adv.* Ngokuthobeka.
- Submit**, *v.j.* Ukuvuma; ukululama; ukuzinikela, to submit one's self.
- Submission**, *n.* Intobeko; ululamo.
- Subscribe**, *v.t.* Ukubhala, to write one's name; ukunikela imali, to give money.
- Subside**, *v.t.* Ukubohla.
- Subsist to**, *v.i.* Ukuphila.
- Substance**, *n.* Isibili; umongo.
- Substitute**, *n.* Omele omnye, he who stands for another.
- Subtle**, *adj.* Nobuqokolo; lukm-kile.
- Subtract**, *v.t.* Ukuphungula.
- Succeed**, *v.t.* To follow, ukulandela; ukuza esikhundleni, to come in the place of; ukuphumelela, to prosper.
- Success**, *n.* Impumelelo.
- Succession**, *n.* Ukukroza; ukulandelana.
- Successor**, *n.* Umlandeli; ongena esikhundleni somnye.
- Succour**, *v.t.* Ukusiza; ukunceda.
- Succumb, to**, *v.i.* Ukoyiseka; ukuwiswa.
- Suck, to**, *v.t.* Ukwanya; ukumf-mfitha.
- Sudden**, *adv.* Ngesiquphe; ngephanyazo; ngequbuliso; *adj.* si-quphe.
- Sue, to**, *v.t.* Ukumangalela.
- Suet**, *n.* Amanqatha alukhuni.
- Suffer**, *v.t.* Ukuva ubuhlungu; ukunyamezela, to endure pain; ukuvumela, to let, allow.
- Suffering**, *n.* Intlungu; inkathazo; imbandezelo, oppression.
- Suffice**, *v.t.* Ukwanela; kwanele ukuthi, suffice to say.
- Sufficient**, *adj.* Anele.
- Suffocate**, *v.t.* Ukufuthanisela.
- Suffocated, to be**, *v.i.* Ukufuthe-lana.
- Sugar**, *n.* Iswekile.
- Sugar-cane**, *n.* Imfe.
- Suggest, to**, *v.t.* Ukucebisa.
- Suggestion**, *n.* Icebo.
- Suit, of clothes**, *n.* Isuti yengubo.
- Suit, in law**, *n.* Ityala.
- Suitable**, *adj.* Fanelekile.
- Sulky, to be**, *v.i.* Ukucaphuka; ukuqumba.
- Summer**, *n.* Ihlobo.
- Summit**, *n.* Incopho.



- Summon**, *v.t.* Ukubiza.
- Sun**, *n.* Ilanga.
- Sunbeam**, *n.* Umtha.
- Sunday**, *n.* Imini yeCawa.
- Sunday, School**, *n.* Isikolo se-Cawa.
- Sundown, sunset**, *n.* Ukutshona kwelanga.
- Sunrise**, *n.* Ukuphuma kwelanga.
- Superintend**, *v.t.* Ukongamela.
- Superintendent**, *n.* Umongameli.
- Superior person**, *n.* Umntu oyintloko.
- Supine**, *adj.* Unqenayo.
- Supper**, *n.* Isopholo ; isidlo sokuhlwa.
- Supper, the Lord's** *n.* Umthendeleko weNkosi.
- Supple**, *adj.* Thambile ; bhetyebhetye.
- Supplicate**, *v.t.* Ukuthandaza ; ukukhunga.
- Supplier**, *n.* Umniki ; umphi.
- Supply**, *v.t.* Ukupha ; ukunika.
- Support**, *v.t.* Ukuxhasa ; ukuthwala.
- Supporter**, *n.* Umxhasi ; umsekelo.
- Suppose**, *v.j.* Ukucinga ; ukucamanga.
- Supposition**, *n.* Uzindlo ; isizindlo.
- Suppress**, *v.t.* Ukoyisa.
- Supreme, authority**, *n.* Ubukhosi obukhulu ; igunya elikhulu.
- Sure, to be**, *v.j.* Ukuqiniseka.
- Surely**, *adj.* Ngenyaniso ; ngokwenyaniso ; ngenene ; ngokuqinisekileyo.
- Surgeon**, *n.* Igqira, doctor generally.
- Surly**, *adj.* Ingqwangangqwili, a surly person.
- Surname**, *n.* Isibongo, a name of praise given on occasions ; igama lakowenu, of relatives.
- Surpass**, *v.t.* Ukugqitha ; ukudlulisela.
- Surplus, remainder**, *n.* Isisalela.
- Surprise**, *v.t.* Ukuzama ; ukugqibula ; *n.* iqubuliso.
- Surrender**, *v.j.* Ukunikela.
- Surround**, *v.t.* Ukurawula ; ukungqinga.
- Survey**, *v.t.* Ukuhlola, to spy ; ukulongalanga ; ukucanda umhlaba, of land.
- Survive**, *v.i.* Ukusala ; ukushiyeleka kwabafileyo.
- Suspect**, *v.t.* Ukurancla.
- Suspend**, *v.t.* Ukuxhoma ; ukulengalengisa ; ukumisa ezimfanelweni, to stop or suspend from duty.
- Sustain**, *v.t.* Ukuxhasa ; ukuzimasa ; ukusekela.
- Sustenance**, *n.* Isixhaso ; into etyiwayo.
- Swallow**, *n.* Inkonjane ; *v.t.* ukuginya.
- Swamp**, *n.* Umgxobhozo.
- Swap**, *v.t.* Ukwana.
- Swarm**, *n.* Indimbane ; ibukubuku, of bees.
- Sway**, *v.t.* Ukujingajinga ; *n.* ubukhosi, rule, dominion.
- Swear**, *v.j.* Ukufunga, to take an oath ; ukuthuka, to swear at.
- Sweat**, *v.i.* Ukubila.
- Sweep**, *v.t.* Ukutshayela.
- Sweeping-brush**, *n.* Umnyani ; umtshayelo, a broom.

- Sweepings, n.** Inkunkuma.  
**Sweet, adj.** Mnandi ; nencasa.  
**Sweeten, v.t.** Ukwenza mnandi.  
**Sweetheart, n.** Isithandwa.  
**Sweetness, n.** Ubumnandi.  
**Swell, v.i.** Ukudumba ; ukufu-  
 kuka.  
**Swerve, v.i.** Ukuphambuka.  
**Swift, adj.** Khawuleza ; n. uku-  
 khawuleza, swiftness.  
**Swim, v.i.** Ukudada.  
**Swimmer, n.** Indadi ; intlambi.  
**Swindle, v.t.** Ukukhohlisa ; uku-  
 dla umntu, to cheat a person.  
**Swindler, n.** Umkhohlisi.  
**Swine, n.** Ihangu.

## T

- Tabernacle, n.** Umnquba ; i-  
 nte.  
**Table, n.** Itafile.  
**Tablecloth, n.** Iqhiya yetafile.  
**Tack, n.** Isikhonkwane esincinane.  
**Tack, to, v.t.** To sew together,  
 ukurwila.  
**Tail, n.** Umsila.  
**Take, v.t.** Ukuthabatha ; ukwa-  
 mkela, to receive ; ukususa, to  
 take away.  
**Tale, n.** Imbali ; fable, intsomi.  
**Talent, n.** Italente.  
**Talk, v.i.** Ukuthetha ; ukuraphuka ;  
 to talk nonsense.  
**Talkative-person, n.** Ipholo-  
 pholo ; iiphuraphu.  
**Tall, adj.** De ; umntu omde, a tall  
 person.  
**Tallness, n.** Ubude.  
**Tallow, n.** Amafutha.  
**Tally, to, v.ji.** Ukungqinelana.
- Swineherd, n.** Umalusi weha-  
 ngu.  
**Swing, v.t.** Ukujinga.  
**Switch, n.** Uswazi.  
**Swoon, v.t.** Ukuwa isithulu.  
**Sword, n.** Ikrele.  
**Syllable, n.** Ukwahlulwa kwama-  
 gama, division of letters.  
**Symbol, n.** Umlinganiselo.  
**Sympathize, v.i.** Ukuvela ; uku-  
 sizela.  
**Sympathy, n.** Uvelwano.  
**Symptom, n.** Isibonakalo.  
**Synod, n.** Intlanganiso enkulu  
 yabafundisi.
- Talons, n.** Iinzipho zokhozi, etc.  
**Tame, adj.** Thambile ; v.t. uku-  
 qeqesha ; ukuqala.  
**Tan, v.t.** Ukufaka isikhumba e-  
 maxolweni ; ukusuka.  
**Tantalize, v.t.** Ukukhanukisa ;  
 ukufundulula.  
**Tap, n.** Into yokuthulula ; v.t.  
 ukunqonqoza.  
**Tar, n.** Itela ; ukudyobha ngetela  
 to tar.  
**Tardy, adj.** Libalayo ; nqenayo ;  
 cothayo.  
**Tarnish, v.t.** Ukungcolisa.  
**Tarry, v.t.** Ukulibala ; ukulinda.  
**Tassel, n.** Itshoba.  
**Task, n.** Umsebenzi.  
**Taste, v.t.** Ukuva ngomlomo.  
**Tatter, n.** Inikiniki ; ijacu.  
**Taught, adj.** Fundisiwe.  
**Taunt, v.t.** Ukufundulula ; uku-  
 qhula.

- Tax**, *n.* Inali yerafu; *v.t.* ukurafisa.
- Teach**, *v.t.* Ukufundisa.
- Teachable**, *adj.* Nakufundiswa.
- Teacher**, *n.* Umfundisi wosapho.
- Tea**, *n.* Iiti.
- Tear**, *n.* Iinyembezi; *v.t.* ukukrazula, to rend.
- Tease**, *v.t.* Ukufundulula; ukucaphukisa.
- Teat**, *n.* Umbele.
- Tedious**, *adj.* Dinisayo.
- Teeth**, *n.* Amazinyo.
- Telescope**, *n.* Into yokubona kude; ifelkekili (from Dutch).
- Tell**, *v.t.* Ukuxela; ukwazisa, to make known.
- Temper, disposition**, *n.* Isimilo.
- Temper**, *v.t.* Ukuthambisa, to soften; *n.* umoya omhle, good humour; umsindo, bad temper.
- Temperate, to be**, *v.t.* Ukuzithiba; ukuzibamba.
- Tempest**, *n.* Isaqhwithi.
- Temple**, *n.* Indlu kaThixo; itempile.
- Temp't**, *v.t.* Ukuhenda; ukulinga.
- Temptation**, *n.* Isihendo; isilingo.
- Tempter**, *n.* Umhendi; uSathana.
- Ten**, *adj.* Ishumi.
- Tenacious**, *adj.* Ncamatheleyo; luncangathi.
- Tend**, *v.t.* Ukulinda; ukwalusa.
- Tender**, *adj.* Thambile; buthathaka.
- Tenderness**, *n.* Ukuba buthathakana.
- Tendon**, *n.* Umsipha.
- Tent**, *n.* Itente.
- Terminate**, *v.t.* Ukugqibela; ukuphela.
- Termination**, *n.* Isiphelo.
- Terrible**, *adj.* Oyikekayo.
- Terrify**, *v.t.* Ukoyikisa.
- Territory**, *n.* Umhlaba; ilizwe.
- Terror**, *n.* Uloyiko; uvalo.
- Test**, *v.t.* Ukuvavanya; ukulinga; *n.* umlingo.
- Testament**, *n.* Umnqophiso; imvumelwano; iTestamente eNtsha, the New Testament; iTestamente eNdala, the Old Testament.
- Testify**, *v.t.* Ukungqina.
- Testimony**, *n.* Ubungqina.
- Thank, to**, *v.t.* Ukubulela; imibulelo, thanks.
- Thankful**, *adj.* Nombulelo.
- Thankfully**, *adv.* Ngokubulela; ngombulelo.
- Thankfulness**, *n.* Umbulelo.
- That**, in order that, *conj.* Ukuze; ukuba.
- That**, *dem. pron.*, is expressed by the Xhosa demonstrative pronouns which correspond to each class of nouns both singular and plural which plural *those*, (see) The demonstrative pronouns for *that* are, *lowo* or *lowa*, *elo*, *leyo*, *eso*, *elo*, *obo*, *oko*, as given below.
- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| That man,      | <i>Lowo</i> mntu.  |
| That horse,    | <i>Elo</i> hashe.  |
| That dog,      | <i>Leyo</i> nja.   |
| That servant,  | <i>Eso</i> sicaka. |
| That infant,   | <i>Olo</i> sana.   |
| That tree,     | <i>Lowo</i> mthi.  |
| That kindness, | <i>Obo</i> bubele. |
| That food,     | <i>Oko</i> kutya.  |
- That's all.** Kuphela ke.

**That all.** Oko konke.

**That there,** referring to an object a little further away or yonder, is expressed by nearly the same forms with *ya* added, as, *Lowa mtu*, that man there or yonder. *Okuya kutya*, that food there, or yonder.

**Thatch, v.t.** Ukufulela ngengca; ukuthunga ngengca.

**Thatch, n.** Ingca yokufulela.

**Thatcher, n.** Umthungi wezindlu; umfuleli.

**The, def. art.** There is no separate or distinct part of speech in Xhosa corresponding to the *definite* article in English. Its place is supplied so far by the noun prefixes, and by the demonstrative pronouns, being used to indicate or specialize an individual or object. What are called the *verbal medials* or particles are used as second accusatives and also serve to mark out an object or person, which in English would be clearly indicated by the definite article.

**Thee, pron.** Ku, objective form.

**Theft, n.** Ubusela; ulubo.

**Their, pass. pron.,** by the forms of the possessive pronoun for each class, *wabo, babo, obo, zabo*, etc.

**Them, pers. pron. objec.** is expressed in the full or emphatic forms by *bona, wona, zona, zona, zona, yona*, according to the class of noun. When used with the verb as objectives they are, *ba, wa, zi, zi, zi, yi*, as, I will help them, *ndiya kubanceda*.

**Themselves, pron.** Bona ngokwabo.

**Then, adv.** Ke, in continuation of narrative; also by the verb *ukuzaza*, as *waza waqala ukusebenza*, then he began to work.

Oko, referring to time.

Ngelo xesha, at that time.

**There, adv.** Apho; khona.

**There is,** Kukho, as,

'There is a person here, *kukh' umntu apha*.

There is not a person here, *akukho mtu apha*.

There was, *bekukho, kwakukho*.

There was not, *bekungekho, kwakungekho*.

**Thereabout, adv.** Malunga khona; ngakhona.

**Therefore, conj.** Ngako oko; ngoko; ngako oko ke; ngenxa yoko.

**These, dem. pron.,** is expressed by the demonstrative pronouns in Xhosa which correspond to each class of nouns—no plural in seventh and eighth classes. The forms are, *aba, la, ezi, ezi, ezi, le*.

CL. i. These people, *Aba bantu*

ii. These horses, *La mahashe*.

iii. These dogs, *Ezi zinja*.

iv. These servants, *Ezi zicaka*.

v. These infants, *Ezi ntsana*.

vi. These trees, *Le mithi*.

**They, pers. pron.** is expressed by *bona, wona, zona, yona*, when used in the full and emphatic form; or by the verbal prefixes, *ba, a, zi, zi, zi, yi*, when used before a verb.

1. They are walking, *bahamba*.  
They are walking, *bona bayahamba*.
2. As referring to Nouns of the different classes, by the pronouns *bona, wona, zona, zona, zona, yana*, as

i. The people, are still in the house.

Abantu *bona* basesendlwini.

ii. The horses are still feeding.  
Amahashe *wona* asadla.

iii. The dogs are still barking.  
Izinja *zona* zisakhonkotha.

**Thick, adj.** Jiyile; ngqingqwa, of heavy cloth; mbombosholo, *i.e.* stout; xinene, dense.

**Thicken, v.t.** Ukujiyisa.

**Thicket, n.** Udada.

**Thief, n.** Isela; itutu, cattle stealer, during war time.

**Thieving, n.** Ukuba; ukututa.

**Thigh, n.** Ithanga.

**Thin, adj.** Bhityile; obungenyama; ngenanyama.

**Thing, n.** Into.

**Think, v.i.** Ukucinga; ukucamanga ukuba, to conclude; ukukhumbula, to remember.

I think that child is pretty, ndicinga ukuba laa mntwana mhle.

**Thirst, n.** Inxano; I am thirsty, ndinxaniwe.

**This, dem. pron.,** is expressed by the demonstrative pronouns in Xhosa which correspond to each class of nouns, both singular and plural. The forms for *this* are, *Lo, eli, le, esi, olu, obu, lo, oku*.

CL. i. This man, *Lo* mntu.

ii. This horse, *Eli* hashe.

CL. iii. This dog, *Le* nja.

iv. This servant, *Esi* sicaka.

v. This infant, *Olu* sana.

vi. This tree, *Lo* mthi.

vii. This kindness, *Obu* bubele

viii. This food, *Oku* kutya.

This side, *nganeno*.

During this year, *ngalo* nyaka.

**Thistle, n.** Ikhakakhaka.

**Thorn, n.** Iliva; ameva (singular and plural).

**Thorny, adj.** Nameva.

**Thoroughly, adv.** Kakuhle; ngokufezekileyo.

**Those, dem. pron.** is expressed by the plural forms of *that*. They are, *abo, lawo, ezo, ezo, leyo*—no plural in seventh and eighth classes; as

CL. i. Those people, *Abo* bantu.

ii. Those horses, *Lawo* mahashe.

iii. Those dogs, *Eso* zinja.

iv. Those servants, *Ezo* zicaka.

v. Those infants, *Ezo* ntsana.

vi. Those trees, *Leyo* mithi.

**Thou, pron.** Wena.

**Though, conj.** Nakuba; noko.

**Thought, n.** Ingcamango; ingcinga, I thought I ought to pay the debt, ndaba ndifanele ukuhlawula ityala.

**Thoughtful, adj.** Nengcinga.

**Thousand, adj.** and *n.* Iwaka.

**Thrash, v.t.** Ukubhula, to thrash corn; ukubetha, to beat.

**Thrashing-floor, n.** Isanda.

**Thread, n.** Usinga; umsono.

**Thread-bare, adj.** Gugile; ibhatyi. yam igugile, my coat is thread-bare.

- Threat**, *n.* Intsongelo; isisongelo.  
**Threaten**, *v.t.* Ukusongela.  
**Three**, *n.* Ntathu; *adj.* isithathu, third; kathathu, thrice.  
**Threefold**, *adj.* Kathathu.  
**Threepenny piece** *n.* Itiki.  
**Thresh**, *v.t.* Ukubhula.  
**Threshing-stick**, *n.* Isibhulo.  
**Thrift**, *n.* Inzuziso.  
**Thrive**, *v.i.* Ukuhluma; ukwanda; ukutyeba ngemfuyo, to be rich in stock.  
**Throat**, *n.* Umqala.  
**Throb**, *v.t.* Ukubetha komthambo; ukuthuthumba, to suffer pain as from a sting or abscess.  
**Throne**, *n.* Isihlalo sobukhosi; itrone.  
**Throng**, *v.t.* Ukukhandanisa; *n.* ingxinano.  
**Throttle**, *v.t.* Ukukrwitsha.  
**Throw**, *v.t.* Ukugibisela; ukuphosa; ukulahla, to throw away.  
**Thrust**, *v.t.* Ukuhlaba; ukugwaza; ukuhlab' amahlanza, to stab.  
**Thumb**, *n.* Isithupha; usithupha.  
**Thunder**, *n.* Iindudumo; *v.i.* ukududuma; ukuzongoma, sound of distant thunder.  
**Thursday**, *n.* uLwesine, *i.e.* the fourth day, counting from Monday.  
**Thus**, *adv.* Njalo; nje; ngolu hlobo, in this manner; ngale ndlela, in this way.  
**Thwart**, *v.t.* Ukuphazamisa; ukuchasa.  
**Thy**, *pron.* Wakho, lakho, yakho, etc., according to the class of noun.  
**Thyself**, *pron.* Ngokwakho.  
**Tick**, *n.* Umkhaza, small tick; indlanga, spotted tick; ikhalane, the large tick; inkazane, young tick in the grass.  
**Ticket**, *n.* Itikiti.  
**Tickle**, *v.t.* Ukunyumbanyumba.  
**Tide**, *n.* Umsinga; ukunyusa or ukulwa kolwandle, the rising of of the tide; ukuwutha, or ukuzola, the ebbing.  
**Tidings**, *n.* Iindaba.  
**Tidiness**, *n.* Ukucoceka; ubuhomba, ukunxiba kakuhle.  
**Tie**, *v.t.* Ukubopha; ukuqhina, to tie a knot.  
**Tiger**, *n.* Ingwe.  
**Tight**, *adj.* Qinile; *v.t.* ukuqinisa, to tighten.  
**Tightness**, *n.* Ukuqina; ukuthi nkqi; ukuvingceka, of the chest.  
**Till**, to, *v.t.* Ukulima umhlaba; *n.* umlimi, a tiller, a cultivator.  
**Till**, *n.* Ibhokisana yemali.  
**Till**, *adv.* De, with the proper prefixes according to the pronoun or noun used.  
     Till I go away, *Ndide* ndimke.  
     Till you go away, *Ude* umke.  
     Till he arrives, *Ade* afike.  
     Till we finish, *Side* sigqibe.  
     Till ye come, *Nide* nize.  
     Till they begin, *Bade* baqale.  
**Tilt**, to, *v.t.* Ukuthambekisa.  
**Tilted**, *adj.* Thambekile.  
**Timber**, *n.* Umthi; iplanga.  
**Time**, *n.* Ixesha; umzuzu.  
**Times**, or seasons, *n.* Amaxa.  
**Timid**, *adj.* Gwala; oyika.  
**Timidity**, *n.* Ukoyika.  
**Tinkle**, *v.i.* Ukukhenkceza; ukuhlokoma.  
**Tiny**, *adj.* Ncinane.

- Tip, n.** Incam.
- Tipsy, adj.** Nxilile.
- Tiptoe, to stand on, v.i.** Ukungcotsha; ukuma ngamazondolwane.
- Tire, v.t.** Ukukhathaza; *n.* Ibhanti, tyre of a wheel.
- Tired, adj.** Diniwe.
- Tiresome, adj.** Dinisile; dinisayo.
- Tithe, n.** Isishumi, a tenth.
- To, prep.** Ku. *To* may be expressed.
- By *ku* as the sign of the Dative case before nouns and pronouns.  
He spoke *to* me, Wathetha *kum*.  
He went *to* him, Waya *kuye*.  
He came to us, Weza *kuthi*.
  - By what is called the Locative case of the noun, as,  
He spoke *to* the people, Wathetha *ebantwini*.  
He went *to* the river, Waya *emlanjeni*.  
He came *to* the church, Weza *etyalikeni*.
- Toad, n.** Isele; isanyankomo; indubule, a large frog.
- Toast, v.t.** Ukosa.
- Tobacco, n.** Icuba.
- Today, adv.** Namhla; namhlanje.
- Toe, n.** Uzwane.
- Together, adv.** Kunye, in united effort.  
Work together—unitedly, in time.  
Sebenzani *kunye*.  
Work together—in one place, Sebenzani *ndawo nye*.
- Toll, v.i.** Ukusebenza; ukuxele-nga.
- Token, n.** Isiboniso.
- Toll, v.t.** Ukubetha; intsimbi to toll the bell.
- Tomb, n.** Ingwaba.
- Tomorrow, adv.** Ngomso.
- Tongue, n.** Ulwimi.
- Tooth, n.** Izinyo; *plur.* amazinyo, often contracted to amenyo.
- Toothache, n.** Ubuhlungu bezinyo; ndifa lizinyo, or ndinezinyo, I have toothache.
- Top, n.** Umphezulu; incopho, point.
- Topic, n.** Intloko yengxoxo, topic of discussion.
- Topple, v.i.** Ukuwa; ukudilika.
- Torch, n.** Isikhuni somlilo.
- Torment, v.t.** Ukuvisa ubuhlungu; *n.* intuthumbo.
- Torn, adj.** Krazukile.
- Torrent, n.** Umsinga omkhulu; isikhukula.
- Tortoise, n.** Ufudo; isikolupati.
- Torture, to, v.t.** Ukuthuthumbisa.
- Toss, v.t.** Ukuphosa phezulu.
- Totter, to, v.t.** Ukutotoba.
- Touch, v.t.** Ukuchukumisa, ukuphatha.
- Tour, n.** Ihambo.
- Towel, n.** Itawuli.
- Town, n.** Idolophu.
- Toy, n.** Into yokudlalisa.
- Trace, v.t.** Ukulanda; ukulanda umkhondo, to trace the spoor, to track.
- Track, n.** Umkhondo, trail, mark, foot-prints.
- Tract, n.** Ilizwe, of country; incwadana, a pamphlet.
- Trade, n.** Intengo; ishishini, a handcraft; *v.t.* ukurweba.

- Trader, n.** Umthengi; umrwebi.  
**Tradition, n.** Imbali; isithetho.  
**Traduce, to, v.t.** Ukuhleba.  
**Traducer, n.** Umhlebi.  
**Traffice, n.** Urwebo; intengo; nentengiso.  
**Trail, n.** Umkhondo; umzila!  
**Train, a line or row, n.** Ukrozo; railway, uloliwe; itreni; *v.t.* ukuqeqesha.  
**Traitor, n.** Umngcatshi.  
**Tramp, n.** Umhambi; *v.i.* ukuhambahamba.  
**Trample, v.t.** Ukunyathela; ukunyhasha.  
**Tranquil, adj.** Zolile.  
**Transaction, n.** Umcimbi.  
**Transfer, v.t.** Ukuguqulela.  
**Transfigured, to be, v.t.** Ukwenziwa ngakumbi isimo.  
**Transform, v.t.** Ukuguqula isimo; ukwenza ngakumbi.  
**Transformed, adj.** Yenziwe ngakumbi.  
**Transgress, v.t.** Ukugqitha umthetho; ukona.  
**Transgressor, n.** Umgqithimthetho; umoni.  
**Transgression, n.** Isigqitho; isono.  
**Translate, v.t.** Ukuguqula kwenye intetho; ukutolika.  
**Translator, n.** Umguquli.  
**Translation, n.** Uguqulo; inguqulo.  
**Transplant, v.t.** Ukumilisela.  
**Transmit, v.t.** Ukuthumela.  
**Transport, n.** Ukuthutha impahla.  
**Trap, n.** Umgibe; isigu; *v.t.* ukuthiyela iintaka, to snare birds.  
**Travail, n.** Inimba.  
**Travel, v.i.** Ukuhamba.  
**Traveller, n.** Umhambi.  
**Treachery, n.** Ukungcatsha; ubuntlolela yombini, a spy on both sides.  
**Tread, v.t.** Ukunyathela; ukuxovula.  
**Treasure, n.** Ubutyebi; indyebo.  
**Treat, v.t.** Ukuphatha.  
**Treatment, n.** Impatho.  
**Treaty, n.** Imvumelwano; umnqophiso.  
**Tree, n.** Umthi.  
**Tremble, v.i.** Ukungcangcazela.  
**Trench, n.** Umscle.  
**Trepass, n.** Isigqitho.  
**Tribe, n.** Isizwe.  
**Tribulation, n.** Imbandezelo.  
**Tributory, to be, v.i.** Ukukhonza.  
**Tribute, to pay, v.i.** Ukurafa.  
**Trick, n.** Imfeketho, in sport.  
**Trickery, n.** Uqhophololo, *or* ubuqhophololo, mischief.  
**Trickle, v.i.** Ukuchiza.  
**Trifle, v.i.** Ukudlala; ukufeketha.  
**Trim, make tidy, v.t.** Ukuqulunqa.  
**Trip, to, v.i.** Ukukhubeka.  
**Tripe, n.** Ulusu.  
**Triumph, v.t.** Ukoyisa; *n.* uloyiso.  
**Troop, n.** Umkhosi; *plur.* imikhosi.  
**Trot, v.i.** Ukuquhqa, to make a horse to trot, ukuquqhisa.  
**Trouble, n.** Inkathazo.  
**Trouble, v.t.** Ukukhathaza.  
**Trouble, to be in, v.i.** Ukukhathazeka.  
**Troublesome, adj.** Nenkathazo.



- Trough, *n.* Umkhombe.  
 Trousers, *n.* Ibhulukhwe.  
 Trudge, *v.i.* Ukuhamba.  
 True, *adj.* Nyaniso ; nene.  
 Truly, *adv.* Ngenene.  
 Trumpet, *n.* Ixilongo.  
 Trunk, *n.* Isikhondo, somthi, of a tree ; umboko wendlovu, of an elephant ; ityeya, box.  
 Trust, *v.t.* Ukuthemba.  
 Trustworthy, *adj.* Thembekile ; thembekayo.  
 Truth, *n.* Inyaniso ; incene.  
 Truthful, *adj.* Nyanisekile.  
 Try, *v.i.* Ukulinga ; ukuthetha ityala lomntu, to try a case ; ukuvavanya, to test, examine.  
 Try again, *plur.* Linga kanjako.  
 Tub, *n.* Umphanda.  
 Tub, washing, *n.* Umphanda wokuhlambela.  
 Tube, *n.* Umbhobho ; ijelo.  
 Tuft, *n.* Isipha.  
 Tug, to, *v.t.* Ukutsala.  
 Tugofwar, *n.* Ukutsalana.  
 Tumble, *v.i.* Ukuwa ; ukweyela, into a hole or river.  
 Tumour, *n.* Ithumba.  
 Tumult, *n.* Isaqunge ; isiphotshongo ; ingxolo.  
 Tune, *n.* Iculo.  
 Turbulent, *adj.* Phithizelisayo ; xokozela.  
 Turf, a piece of, *n.* Isinde.  
 Turkey, *n.* Ikalkuni.  
 Turn, to, *v.t.* Ukujika ; ukubuya ; ukusonga, to turn cattle.  
 Turned, to be, *v.i.* Ukubuyiswa ; ukusongwa.  
 Turtle, *n.* Ufudo lolwandle.  
 Tusk, *n.* Uphondo lwendlovu, of an elephant.  
 Twelve, *adj.* Ishumi elinambini.  
 Twenty, *adj.* Amashumi amabini.  
 Twice, *adv.* Kabini.  
 Twig, *n.* Igatya.  
 Twine, *n.* Umtya ; intambo ephothiweyo, *v.t.* ukuthandela.  
 Twinkle, *v.i.* Ukuphanyaza.  
 Twinkling, *n.* Iphanyazo.  
 Twins, *n.* Amawele.  
 Twist, to, *v.t.* Ukuphatha ; ukuluka ; ukusonta.  
 Twisted, *adj.* Phothiweyo.  
 Twisted, to be, *v.i.* Ukubhijana ; ukusongana.  
 Twixt, *prep.* Phakathi.  
 Two, *adj.* Isibini ; kabini, two-fold.  
 Typify, *v.t.* Ukufanekisa.  
 Tyrant, *n.* Ingximla ; injengele.

## U

- Udder, *n.* Ibele.  
 Ugliness, *n.* Ububi.  
 Ugly, *adj.* Bi.  
 Ulcer, *n.* Isilonda.  
 Ulcerate, *v.i.* Ukuphuma izilonda.  
 Ultimate, *adj.* Gqibela.  
 Umbrage, to take, *v.i.* Ukuqu-umbiseka.  
 Umbrella, *n.* Isambuleli.  
 Umpire, *n.* Umahluli ; iampayile, (from the English).  
 Unable, *adj.* Ngenakho ngenamandla.

- Unaccountable**, *adj.* Xakekile : simanga.
- Unanimity**, *n.* Ubunye ; ukuvana.
- Unanimously**, *adv.* Ngobunye, ngokuvisisana.
- Unappeasable**, *adj.* Ngenakuxoliswa ; nganeliswa.
- Unawares**, *adv.* Ngebhaqo ; ngeqbuliso.
- Unbar**, *v.t.* Ukususa imivalo ; ukuvula.
- Unbecoming thing**, *n.* Into engathe tsha.
- Unbind**, *v.t.* Ukuthukulula ; ukucumbulula.
- Unbridle**, *v.t.* Ukukhulula umkhala.
- Unburden**, *v.t.* Ukuthula umthwalo.
- Unceasing**, *adj.* Ngapheliyo.
- Uncivil**, *adj.* rabaxa ; thetha kakuti, to speak roughly. An uncivil person, umntu osileyo.
- Uncle**, *n.* Ubawokazi, my paternal uncle.  
Uyihlokazi, your paternal uncle ;  
Uyisekazi, his paternal uncle ;  
Umalume, my maternal uncle ;  
Unyokolume, your maternal uncle.  
Uninalume, his maternal uncle.
- Unclean**, *adj.* Ngcolile ; mdaka ;  
Ukungcola, to be unclean ;  
Ukungcolisa, to defile.
- Uncleanness**, *n.* Ukungcola.
- Unclose**, *v.t.* Ukuvula.
- Uncloved**, *adj.* Sile, as izulu elisileyo, clear sky ; ngasibekele.
- Uncoil**, *v.t.* Ukucumbuluka.
- Uncomfortable**, *adj.* Ngonwabile ; ngenakonwaba ; nesithukuthezi.
- Uncomfortably**, *adv.* Ngokungonwabi ; ngesithukuthezi.
- Uncommon**, *adj.* Nqabile ; ngathe sa ; ngaqhelekileyo.
- Unconquerable**, *adj.* Ngoyiseki ; ngenakoyiseka.
- Uncork**, *v.t.* Ukunqika.
- Under**, *prep.* Phantsi ; ngaphantsi.
- Underfoot**, *adv.* Phantsi konyawo.
- Undergo**, *v.t.* Ukuthwala ; ukumelana.
- Underhand**, *adv.* Ngasese ; ngokunyebelzisa.
- Undermine**, *v.t.* Ukumba ngaphantsi.
- Underneath**, *adv.* Ngaphantsi.
- Understand**, *v.t.* Ukuqonda ; ukuqiqu ; ukwazi ; ukuva.
- Understandable**, *adj.* Qondekayo ; nokuqondeka.
- Understanding**, *n.* Ingqondo ; ukwazi ; imvisiswano, mutual.
- Undertake**, *v.t.* Ukwenza.
- Undertaker**, *n.* Umenzi ; umngcwabi, of funerals.
- Undisturbed, to be**, *v.i.* Ukungakhathazwanto ; ukungaphazanyiswa.
- Undo**, *v.t.* Ukukhulula ; ukuqhaqha.
- Undone**, *p.p.* Thukululekile, of a knot.
- Undress**, *v.t.* Ukuhluba.
- Undulating country**, *n.* Ilizwe elinemimango.
- Uneasy, to be**, Ukuxhala ; ukungonwabi ; isithukuthezi, uneasiness.

- Uneatable, adj.** Ngenakudliwa.  
**Unfair, adj.** Ngalongile; *adv.* nekhethe.  
**Unfasten, v.t.** Ukukhulula.  
**Unfeeling, adj.** Ngenanceba; ngenamvelwano.  
**Unfished, adj.** Ngafezekanga; ngenamfezeko; ngagqitywanga.  
**Unfit, adj.** Ngafanele.  
**Unforeseen, adj.** Ngalindelwe; ngabonwanga ngaphambili.  
**Unfortunate, adj.** Nelishwa.  
**Unfold, v.t.** Ukuphengulula; ukwaneka.  
**Ungodly, adj.** NgenaThixo; kohlakele; umginwa.  
**Ungratefully, adv.** Ngokungenam-bulelo.  
**Unhappiness, n.** Usizi; ukungonwabi.  
**Unhappy, adj.** Nosizi.  
**Unhealthy, to be, v.i.** Ukungaphili; ngenampilo intle.  
**Uninhabited, n.** Ze; ngamiweyo; ngahlalwayo.  
**Union, n.** Umanyano.  
**Unite, v.t.** Ukudibanisa; ukumanya; ukubandakanya.  
**Unity, n.** Ubunye; umanyano.  
**Unkind, adj.** Ngenabubele.  
**Unkindness, n.** Intswelo bubele.  
**Unless, conj.** Ngaphandle kokuba.  
**Unload, v.t.** Ukuthula umthwalo.  
**Unluckily, adv.** Nelishwa.  
**Unmanageable, adj.** Ngenakulawulwa; ngevayo.  
**Unmerciful, adj.** Ngenanceba.  
**Unpleasant, adj.** Mbi; ngakhohsi.  
**Unprincipled person, n.** Isibhoja.  
**Unravel, v.t.** Ukuchuba; ukucedulula.  
**Unripe, adj.** Kiwada.  
**Unroot, v.t.** Ukudonyula; ukunqika.  
**Unseen, adj.** Ngabonwayo.  
**Unseat, v.t.** Ukususa esihlalweni.  
**Unsettled, to be, v.i.** Ukungazoli; ukuphongoma.  
**Unshackle, v.t.** Ukukhulula amakhamandela.  
**Unsociable, person, n.** Ilolo; igantuntu.  
**Unsound, adj.** Phuthile, defective; bolile, rotten.  
**Unstable, adj.** Ngazinzile; hexayo; xengaxengayo.  
**Unsuitable, adj.** Ngafanelekileyo.  
**Untie, v.t.** Ukukhulula; ukuthukulula.  
**Until, prep.** De; ndide ndifike, until I come. (See *till*).  
**Untrue, adj.** Nganyaniseki; buxoki.  
**Untruth, n.** Ubuxoki.  
**Unwilling, to be, v.i.** Ukwala; ukungavumi.  
**Unwise, adj.** Budenge; *adv.* ngobudenge, unwisely.  
**Unworthy, adj.** Ngafanelekileyo.  
**Unyoke, v.t.** Ukukhulula inkabi.  
**Up, Phezulu; entla.**  
     Vuka! sukuma, get up;  
     Nyuka, go up;  
     Misa, set up;  
     Phakamisa, lift up;  
     Nyusa, take up;  
     Khwela, climb.  
**Upbraid, v.t.** Ukuthethisa; ukungxolisa; to scold.  
**Uphold, v.t.** Ukuxhasa; ukuphakamisa; ukusekela.

- Upholder**, *n.* Umsekeli ; umxhasi ; umphakamisi.
- Uplift**, *v.t.* Ukufukula ; ukuphakamisa.
- Upon**, *prep.* Phezulu ; nga, nge, etc. ; phezu kwamatye, upon the stone ; ngaloo mhla, upon that day.
- Upright**, *adj.* Lungile ; ukuthi nkqo, to be upright or perpendicular.
- Uproar**, *n.* Impithizelo ; isaqunge ; isiphendu ; isiphithiphithi.
- Upset**, *v.t.* Ukuphethula ; ukukhathaza, mentally, ukuphazamisa ; ukuduba ; ukuwisa ; ukuphenu-la, to overturn.
- Upspot, of a matter**, *n.* Isiphelo.
- Upstart**, *n.* Imvela-bumini.
- Upwards**, *adv.* Entla ; ngaphezulu.
- Urge**, *v.t.* Ukunyanzela ; ukusunduza ; ukuqhuba.
- Us**, *pron.* Thina, we ; also used the objective ; kuthi, to us.
- Usage**, *n.* Isiqhelo ; umkhwa ; isithethe.
- Use**, *to*, *v.t.* Ukusebenzisa into.
- Used to, to be**, *v.i.* Ukuqhela.
- Useful**, *adj.* Nomsebenzi ; noncedo.
- Useless**, *adj.* Ngenamsebenzi ; ngenaluncedo ; impatshampatsha, a useless fellow.
- Utility, to be of**, *v.i.* Ukufuneka ; into efunekayo, a desirable thing.
- Utilize**, *v.t.* Ukusebenzisa.
- Utterly**, *adv.* Impela ; kanye.
- Uttermost**, *adj.* Esiphelweni ; ekupheleni.

## V

- Vacancy**, *n.* Isithuba ; indawo.
- Vacant**, *adj.* Ze.
- Vacate**, *v.i.* Ukushiya ; ukushenxa ; ukuphuma.
- Vaccinate**, *v.t.* Ukuqaphula.
- Vaccination**, *n.* Uqaphulo.
- Vaccinator**, *n.* Umqaphuli.
- Vacillate**, *v.i.* Ukuthingaza.
- Vacillation**, *n.* Ukuhath' eyeka, a vacillating person.
- Vagabond**, *n.* Isibhadubhadu ; idungudwane.
- Vagary**, *n.* Ukubhuda, to speak incoherently ; intetho esecaleni, irrelevant speech or talk.
- Vail**, *n.* Isikhuselo ; isigqubuthelo.
- Vain, for nothing**, *adj.* Ngelizwi ; ukuzidla, to be vain ; ukufu-  
mana, before another verb ; as ufumana elima akayi kuvuna nto, he is plowing in vain, he won't reap anything.
- Vainglory**, *n.* Ukuzidla ; ikratshi.
- Valliant**, *adj.* Khaliphileyo.
- Valiantly**, *adv.* Ngokukhaliphala ; ngobukioti.
- Valid**, *adj.* Nyanisile ; nenene.
- Valise**, *n.* Ingxowana yempahla ; imvelesi yomhambi, (from English).
- Valley**, *n.* Umfula ; intili, valley of a river.
- Valour**, *n.* Ubugora ; ukhalipho, iqhawe, ikhalipha, a brave man.
- Value**, *n.* Ixabiso ; *v.t.* ukubeka ixabiso.

- Valuable, adj.** Nexabiso ; nqa-bileyo.  
**Van, n.** Inqwelo yokuthutha, vehicle ; uluhlu lokuqala, the front or foremost.  
**Vanish, v.i.** Ukuthi shwaka ; ukuthi nya.  
**Vanity, n.** Okungendawo ; amampunge.  
**Vanquish, v.t.** Ukoyisa.  
**Vapour, n.** Umphunga ; inkungu, a mist.  
**Variable, adj.** Guqukayo.  
**Variation, n.** Inguqulo ; umahluko.  
**Vassal, n.** Umkhonzi.  
**Vast, adj.** Khulu ; umahluko omkhulu, a vast difference.  
**Vat, n.** Ifatyi, a cask ; umphanda, a pot.  
**Vaunt, vi.** ; Ukuqhayisa ukuzitsho,  
**Veal, n.** Inyama yenkonyana.  
**Vegetable, n.** Izityalo ; imifuno.  
**Vehicle, n.** Inqwelo.  
**Vein, n.** Umthambo.  
**Velocity, n.** Ukukhawuleza.  
**Vend, v.t.** Ukuthengisa.  
**Vendor, n.** Umthengisi.  
**Venerate, v.t.** Ukudumisa.  
**Vengeance, n.** Impindezelo.  
**Venison, n.** Inyama yenyamakazi.  
**Venon, n.** Ubuhlungu ; ubuhlungu benyoka, snake poison.  
**Venture, n.** Ilinga.  
**Veracity, n.** Ubunyaniso.  
**Verandah, n.** Ivaranda.  
**Verdure, n.** Uhlaza.  
**Verge, n.** Udini.  
**Verify, v.t.** Ukuqinisa.  
**Verily, adv.** Ngenene ; ngenyaniso.  
**Vermin, n.** Isilwana.  
**Vertical, adj.** Nkqo ; ukuthi nkqo, to be vertical.  
**Vertigo, n.** Isizunguzane ; isiyezi.  
**Very, adv.** Kakhulu ; kunene.  
**Vessel, n.** Isitya.  
**Vest, n.** Iondulubhatyi, (from the Dutch).  
**Vestige, n.** Umkhondo.  
**Veto, n.** Ukwalela.  
**Vex, to, v.t.** Ukuqumbisa ; ukucaphukisa ; ukukhathaza.  
**Vexation, n.** Inkathazo.  
**Vexatious, adj.** Khathazayo.  
**Vibrate, v.i.** Ukudikizela ; ukubebezela, of the lip.  
**Vibration, n.** Udikizelo.  
**Vice, n.** Isono ; inkohlakalo.  
**Vicious, adj.** Nenkohlakalo.  
**Vicinity, n.** Ubufuphi.  
**Vicissitude, n.** Inguqunguqu.  
**Victim, n.** Idini ; inkomo yedini ; Umbingo.  
**Victor, n.** Umeyisi.  
**Victory, n.** Uloyiso.  
**Victuails, n.** Ukudla ; umxhesho.  
**Vie, v.i.** Ukushiyiselana ; ukufunzelana.  
**View, v.t.** Ukukhangela ; ukuboniselana ; *n.* imboniselo, point of view ; imbonakalo ; uluvo, subjective impression, feeling.  
**Vigilance, n.** Ukuphapha ; ukungalali ; ukulinda.  
**Vigilant, adj.** Phaphile ; qabukile.  
**Vigour, n.** Amandla ; ulomelelo.  
**Vile, adj.** Bi ; bhedengu ; itshinga, a vile person ; umntu ophantsi, a mean, low person ; ifokotshela, a worthless person.

- Vileness**, *n.* Ububhedengu ; ubutshafele ; ubufokotshela.
- Villify**, *v.t.* Ukungcolisa ngokuhleba.
- Village**, *n.* Umzi, a town, a collection of houses ; umzana. a small village.
- Villain**, *n.* Inkewu ; umthakathi ; igqwira.
- Villainy**, *n.* Ubugqwira ; inkohlakalo enkulu.
- Vindicate**, *v.t.* Ukuthethela ; ukumela ; ukuphikela.
- Vindicative, to be**, *v.t.* Ukuphindezela.
- Vine**, *n.* Umdiliya ; isaqoni, wild vine.
- Vinegar**, *n.* Iasini.
- Vineyard**, *n.* Isidiliya.
- Violate**, *v.t.* Ukona ; ukwaphula umthetho ; ukudlwengula, to ravish.
- Violence**, *n.* Ubugwanya ; umsi-ndo.
- Violent, to be**, *v.i.* Ukugwanya.
- Violent person**, *n.* Isidlova ; isityhuthutyhuthu ; *adv.* ngokugwanya.
- Viper**, *n.* Inyoka.
- Virgin**, *n.* Intombi.
- Virtue**, *n.* Ukulunga ; isidima.
- Virtuous**, Lungile ; nesidima.
- Virus**, Ityhefu ; isitofu sokuqaphula, vaccination virus.
- Visage**, *n.* Ubuso ; a pleasant countenance, ubuso obuhle.
- Viscera**, *n.* Amathumbu.
- Visible, to be**, *v.i.* Ukubonakala.
- Vision**, *n.* Umbono.
- Visit**, *v.t.* Ukutyelela ; ukuhambelana, to visit one another ; *n.* uhambelo ; intyelelo.
- Visitor**, *n.* Undwendwe ; umhambi.
- Vital**, *adj.* Philile ; nobomi.
- Vitiate**, *v.t.* Ukonakalisa.
- Vivacious**, *adj.* Khaliphile.
- Vivaciously**, *adv.* Ngokukhalipha.
- Vivacity**, *n.* Ukudlamka.
- Vivify**, *v.t.* Ukuphilisa.
- Viz.**, *adv.* Oko kukuthi, *i.e.* that is to say.
- Vocation**, *n.* Ubizo.
- Vociferate**, *v.i.* Ukukhwaza ; ukunqangaza ; ukumemeza.
- Voice**, *n.* Ilizwi ; with a loud voice, ngelizwi elikhulu.
- Volition**, *n.* Imvume.
- Volume**, *n.* Umqulu.
- Voluntarily**, *adv.* Ngokuvuma ; ngokuzithandela ; of intention, ngabomi.
- Volunteer**, *n.* Ovuma ngokwakhe.
- Vomit**, *n.* Ukuhlanza ; ukukhupha.
- Vomit, an emetic**, *n.* Umhlanzi-so.
- Voracious**, *adj.* Igrwambugrwambu ; idlakudla ; umntu onomqala ; *i.e.* a man who has a throat.
- Vouch**, *v.i.* Ukungqina.
- Voucher**, *n.* Isiboniso ; ilasiti.
- Vow**, *n.* Isithembiso, a promise ; *v.t.* ukuthembisa.
- Vulture**, *n.* Ixhalanga.

## W

- Wade**, *v.i.* Ukukrwabaza; ukuwela amanzi.
- Wag**, *v.t.* Ukubungezela; ukutshikiza umsila.
- Wages**, *n.* Umvuzo.
- Wager**, *n.* Isibekelwano; ukubekelana, to make a wager, to bet.
- Wagon**, *n.* Inqwelo; indlela yenqwelo, wagon road.
- Wagtail**, *n.* Umvetshane; umcelu-mvemve.
- Wail**, *v.i.* Ukulila; ukukhala; *n.* Isililo.
- Waist**, *n.* Isinqe.
- Waistcoat**, *n.* Inondulubhatyi, (from the Dutch).
- Wait**, *v.i.* Ukulinda, to watch; Yima apho, wait there, stand there.
- Waiter**, *n.* Umkhonzi wabatyayo.
- Waive**, *v.t.* Ukulahla ibango, to waive a claim.
- Wake**, *v.i.* Ukuvuka ebuthongweni; ukuphaphama; *v.t.* ukuvusa.
- Wale**, *n.* Umvumbo; *v.t.* Ukuxathula, to make marks.
- Walk**, *v.i.* Ukuhamba; hamba, go on; suka, be off.
- Walker**, *n.* Umhambi; isihambi.
- Walking-stick**, *n.* Umsimelelo; umkhuba, for the aged.
- Wall**, *n.* Udonga.
- Wallet**, *n.* Ingxowa yomhambi.
- Wallow**, *v.i.* Ukuqikaqikeka; ukuziqengqa.
- Wand**, *n.* Intonga yobuqili.
- Wander**, *v.i.* Ukulahleka; ukubhadula; ukuduka.
- Wanderer**, *n.* Umlahleki; udwayi, *plur.* iindwayi.
- Wane**, *v.i.* Ukunciphha; inyanga iyafa, the moon is waning.
- Want**, *v.t.* Ukufuna, to desire; ukulangazelela, to long for very much; ukuswela, to be in want of, or destitute of.
- Want, poverty**, *n.* Ubuswela; uswelo, *plur.* iintswelo; ubuhlwe-mpu.
- War**, *n.* Imfazwe.
- Ward**, *v.i.* To ward off, protect, ukuvika; ukuhlanganisela.
- Warden**, *n.* Umlindi; umondli, a guardian.
- Warder**, *n.* Umlindi.
- Wardrobe**, *n.* Iingubo zokunxiba; ikasi yeengubo.
- Wares**, *n.* Impahla zentengo.
- Warfare**, *n.* Imfazwe.
- Warily**, *adv.* Ngokulumka; ukulumkela ingozi, to be cautious of danger.
- Wariness**, *n.* Ukundweba.
- Wary**, to be, *v.i.* Ukundwebela.
- Warm**, *adj.* Shushu; fudumele; *v.i.* fudumala, to be warm; fudumeza, to make warm one's self at the fire.
- Warmth**, *n.* Ubushushu; imfudumalo.
- Warn**, *v.t.* Ukuyala; ukulumkisa, to instruct, inform; ukuvusa, to stir up; ukuvuselela.
- Warning**, *n.* Isilumkiso isiyalo; isiyalekiso; ivuso.
- Warrior**, *n.* Umlwi.
- Wart**, *n.* Intsumpa.

**Was**, *aux. verb.* may be expressed in several ways :—

I. By the past tense of the auxiliary verbs *ukuba*, to be, or *ukuya*, to go, along with the principal verb, as.

*I was* travelling yeasterday.

*Ndibe*, *ndihamba*, or *bendihamba* izolo.

*I was* coming to you.

*Ndibe*, *ndiza* or *bendiza* kuwe.

*He was* working to-day.

*Ube* esebenza, or *ebesebenza* namhlanje.

With the different classes of nouns the forms are the following :

- CL. I. The *mas was* walking,  
Umntu *ube* ehamba, or *ubehamba*.
- ii. The horse *was* running,  
Ihashe *libe* libaleka, or *belibaleka*.
- iii. The dog *was* barking,  
Inja *ibe* ikhonkotha or *ibikhonkotha*.
- iv. The servant *was* working,  
Isicaka *sibe* sisebenza, or *besisebenza*.
- v. The infant *was* crying,  
Usana *lube* lulila or *belulila*.
- vi. The tree *was* growing.  
Umthi *ube* ukhula.
- vii. Wisdom *was* speaking.  
Ubulumko *bube* buthetha, or *bebuthetha*.
- viii. The food *was* eaten.  
Ukutya *kube* kudliwe or *bekudliwe*.

The same variations would take place with the verb *ukuya* to go, as, *wayesebenza*, he was working; and with other uses of *ukuba*, as, *waba ngumchweli*, he became a carpenter.

**Wash**, *v.t.* Ukuhlamba ; ukuxukuxa, to wash the mouth.

**Wasp**, *n.* Unomeva.

**Waste**, *v.t.* Ukuchitha ; ukonakalisa.

**Waster**, *n.* Umchithi.

**Wasteful**, *adj.* Chithayo.

**Wastefully**, *adv.* Ngokuchitha.

**Watch**, *n.* Umlindi ; iwotshi, a time-piece ; *v.t.* ukulinda.

**Watcher**, *n.* Umlindi.

**Watchfulness**, *n.* Ukulinda ; ukuphapha.

**Watchmaker**, *n.* Umenzi we-wotshi.

**Watchman**, *n.* Umlindi ; ivarasha.

**Water**, *n.* Amanzi.

**Water-melon**, *n.* Ivatala.

**Waterpool**, *n.* Ichibi.

**Water-snake**, *n.* Izilenzi.

**Water**, to, *v.t.* Ukunkcenkcesha ; to irrigate, ukunyela.

**Water horses**, to, *v.t.* Ukuseza amahashe.

**Waterfall**, *n.* Ingxangxasi.

**Watery**, *adj.* Namanzi.

**Water-proof**, coat, *n.* Imakentoshi, (from the English).

**Wattle**, *n.* Uluthi ; izinti zokuphingela, wattles.

**Wattled**, *adj.* Phingelweyo.

**Wattle and daub**, *n.* Indlu ephingelweyo yatatyekwa, a wattle and daub house.



- Wave, the hand to, *v.t.* Ukuwawangangisa ; ukuphekuzana, to raise the hands.
- Wave, *n.* of the sea, Iliza ; amaza.
- Wavering, *n.* Ukuxengaxenga ; ukujingajinga, to swing to and fro.
- Wax *n.* Umthwebeba, of bees ; umphula, of the ear ; itywina, sealing wax.
- Way, *n.* Indlela, road ; umkhwa, method, usage, custom.
- Wayfarer, *n.* Umhambi.
- Waylay, to, *v.t.* Ukulalela.
- We, *pron.*, Thina ; thina sobabini, we two ; si, *pron. prefix*, as in siyathetha, we speak.
- Weak, *adj.* Buthathaka ; tyhafilé.
- Weakness, *n.* Ukutyhafa ; ukuba buthathaka.
- Wealth, *n.* Ubutyebi.
- Wealthy, *adj.* Tyebile ; umntu osityebi, a wealthy man.
- Wean, *v.t.* Ukulumla.
- Weapons, *n.* Izikhali.
- Wear, *v.t.* Ukwambatha, of a blanket ; ukunxiba, of clothes ; ukuvatha, of ornaments.
- Weariness, *n.* Ukudinwa.
- Wearisome, to be, *v.i.* Ukudinisa.
- Weary, *adj.* Diniwe ; *v.t.* ukukhathaza ; ukudinisa.
- Weather, *n.* Izulu ; as izulu lisi-bekele, the weather is cloudy.
- Weave, *v.t.* Ukuluka.
- Weaver, *n.* Umluki.
- Web, *n.* Umgibe ; indlu yesigcawu, spider's web.
- Wed, *v.t.* Ukwenda, when a woman marries ; ukuzeka, when a man marries.
- Wedding, *n.* Umtshato.
- Wedge, *n.* Ivere.
- Weed, *v.t.* Ukuhlakula ; *n.* ukhula ; ukwena, to be overgrown with weeds.
- Week, *n.* Iveki, from the Dutch.
- Weekly, *adj.* Ngeeveki zonke, every week.
- Weep, *v.i.* Ukulila.
- Weevil, *n.* Ingqokoqwane.
- Weigh, *v.t.* Ukulinga.
- Weight, *n.* Ubunzima.
- Weighty, *adj.* Nzima.
- Welcome, *v.t.* Ukubukana ; ukuthakazela.
- Welfare, *n.* Intlalo entle ; ilungelo, privilege, advantage.
- Well, *adv.* Philile, in health ; kulungile, generally, it is good, right ; *n.* umthombo, a fountain ; iqula, well of water.
- Well, to be, Ukuphila.
- Well-beloved, *adj.* Sithandwa.
- Well-dressed, *adj.* Nxibe kakuhle.
- Well-known, to be, *v.t.* Ukwaziwa kakuhle ; ukwazeka ; ukuduma.
- Wen, *n.* Ilifa.
- Were, *aux. verb*, is expressed in the same forms as *was*—but in the plural. These forms are,  
*We were* walking.  
*Sibe* sihamba or *besihamba*.  
*They were* running.  
*Babe* bebaleka or *bebebaleka*.
- And for Nouns of the different Classes the forms before the principal verb, are—*bebe*, *ebe*, *bezi*, *bezi*, *bezi* and *ibi*—as the

- trees were growing, *imithi ibi-khula*.
- West**, *n.* *Iatshona-langa*.
- Wet**, *adj.* *Manzi*; *nethile*; *v.t.* *ukunetha*, to be wet through rain.
- Wether**, *n.* *Inkabi yegusha*.
- Whale**, *n.* *Umnenga*.
- What**, *pron.* *Yintoni na*; *ntoni*; *ni, na*; *ni. ?* (See Phrase Book pages 48, 49, for the different ways of expressing *what*).
- What**, *by, pron.* *Ngantoni ? what is it, yintoni na ?*
- Wheat**, *n.* *Inqolowa*.
- Wheedle**, *v.t.* *Ukucenga*.
- Wheel**, *n.* *Umlenze wenqwelo*; *ivili*, (from the Dutch).
- Wheezing sound**. *Ukutswina*, to make a wheezing sound.
- Whelk**, *n.* *Inkumba yaselwandle, lit*, a snail of the sea.
- When**, *adv.* Time definite, *Nini na or or nini*.  
Time indefinite, *xa, xeshikweni*.  
*When* is also expressed by tense forms of the verb, (See Phrase Book page 51).
- Whence**, *adv.* *Ngaphi na ? Ivele ngaphi na, whence did it come*.
- Where**, *adv.* *Phi na or phi*; where is he, *uphi na*; *ulapho ebekhona*, he is where he was. For the different modes of expressing *where*—See Phrase Book pages 46 and 47.
- Whereas**, *adv.* *Kanti*; *ekubeni*.
- Wherefore**, *adv.* *Ngako oko*; *ngoko*.
- Whet**, *v.t.* *Ukulola*.
- Whether**, *adv.* *Nokuba*; *nokuba uyahamba, nokuba uhleli, whe-*
- ther you go or whether you remain*.
- Whetstone**, *n.* *Ilitye lokulola*.
- Whey**, *n.* *Intloya*.
- Which**, *pron. Interrog. and Rel*  
1. As a *Relative*, by *a, o, e*, prefixed to the following word—  
See Phrase Book page 50.  
2. *Interrogative pron.* By *phi na*, or *phi*, used with prefix according to class of noun.  
*Which person, Wuph' umntu ?*  
*Which horse, Liph' ihashe ?*  
*Which dog, Yiph'inja ?*  
*Which house, Yiph' indlu ?*  
The above contractions stand for *wuphi na, iphi na, yiphi na*.
- While**, *adv.* *Xa*; *ngexesha*; *n.* *Umzuzu*; *umzuzwana*, a little while.
- Whip**, *v.t.* *Ukubetha*; *ukuphaxula*; *n.* *Izinja*; *inqatshi*.
- Whirl**, *v.t.* *Ukuzunguleza*.
- Whirlwind**, *n.* *Isivunguvungu isaqhwithi*; *isaqunge*.
- Whiskers**, *n.* *Irwanqa*, a man with whiskers.
- Whisper**, *to, v.t.* *Ukusebeza*.
- Whisperer**, *n.* *Umsebezi*.
- Whistle**, *v.t.* *Ukwenza umlozi*; *n.* *Umlozi*; *ikhwelo*.
- White**, *adj.* *Mhlophe*.
- White man**, *n.* *umLungu*; *umntu omhlophe*.
- White star, on beast**, *n.* *Imbasa*, also an ornament for the head.
- Whiten**, *v.t.* *Ukwenza mhlophe*.
- Whiteness**, *n.* *Ubumhlophe*.
- Whitewash**, *n.* *Ikalika, i.e.* lime.
- Whither**, *adv.* *Ngaphi na*.

**Whitlow, n.** Isilonda sesandla ; irangxaroti, a sore or swelling on the foot.

**Whittle, v.t.** Ukutshweza.

**Whizzing sound, n.** Umpunga wembumbulu.

**Who, pron. Interrog. and Relat.** As an *Interrogative* by *ubani na* ?

1. Who are you, ungubani na ?
2. Who is he, ungubani na ?
3. Who is it, ngubani na ? *lit.* it is who.
4. Who are they, ngobani na ? or bangobani na ?

As a *Relative Pronoun* by *a, o, e*, prefixed to the following word.

1. The man *who* is speaking. Umntu othethayo.
2. The woman *who* is singing. Umfazi ovumayo.
3. The horse *which* is running. Ihashe elibalekayo.
4. The house *which* is burning, Indlu etshayo.

**Whole, adj.** Onke, with varying prefix when used to express the sense of *all*, as,

1. The whole or *all*, the people, Bonke abantu.
2. The whole or *all*, the horses, Amahashe onke.
3. The whole or *all*, the cattle, Zonke iinkomo.

**Whoop, v.i.** Ukumemeza, to call.

**Why, adj.** Ngani na ; yini na, kungani na ukuba ; (See Phrase Book page 46).

**Wick, n.** Umtya wesibane.

**Wicked, adj.** Khohlakele.

**Wickedly, adv.** Ngenkohlakalo.

**Wickedness, n.** Inkohlakalo.

**Wicket, n.** Isango.

**Wide, adj.** Banzi.

**Widen, v.t.** Ukutwabalula ; ukwenza banzi.

**Wideness, n.** Ububanzi.

**Widow, n.** Umholokazi.

**Widower, n.** Umhlolo.

**Widowhood, n.** Ubuhlolokazi.

**Width, n.** Ububanzi.

**Wife, n.** Umfazi.

My wife, umkam ;  
your wife, umkakho ;  
his wife, umkakhe ;  
young wife, umtshakazi.

**Wife's father, n.** Usomfazi.

**Wife's mother, n.** Umkhwekazi.

**Wife's brother, a.** Umkhwe.

**Wife's father's people, n.** Ubukhwe.

**Wild, adj.** Ndwebile ; indwebi, a wild man.

**Wilderness, n.** Intlango.

**Wile, n.** Icebo ; iyelenqe.

**Wilfully, adv.** Ngabomi.

**Will to, v.t.** Ukuvuma ; *n.* Imvume.

**Willing, adj.** Vumayo ; ukuthumakalala, to be willing, obliging, ready to go.

**Willow, n.** Umngcunube.

**Wily, person, n.** Umntu onamamene-mene.

**Win, v.t.** Ukuzuza, to gain.

**Wince, v.i.** Ukuhlasimla.

**Wind, v.t.** Ukubiya or biyela.

**Window, n.** Ifestile.

**Windpipe, n.** Uqhoqhoqho.

**Wine, n.** Iwayini ; ivelyini.

**Wing, n.** Iphiko.

**Wink, v.i.** Ukuphanyaza ; ukuncina iliso.

- Winnow, v.t.** Ukwela.  
**Winter, n.** Ubusika; in the winter, ebusika.  
**Wipe, v.t.** Ukusula; ukufinya, to wipe or blow the nose.  
**Wire, n** Ucingo, brass, copper or telegraph wire.  
**Wisdom, n.** Ubulumko.  
**Wise, adj.** Lumkile; *n.* Isilumko, a wise man.  
**Wish, desire, want, v.t.** Ukufuna; ukuthanda, and by the auxiliary verb ukunga; as ndinga ndingahamba, I wish to go.  
**Wish, desire, n.** Umnqweno; isilangazelelo, a strong wish.  
**Witch, n.** Igqwira; umthakathi.  
**Witch-doctor, n.** Isanuse.  
**Witchcraft, n.** Ubugqwira; ukuthakatha; ubuthi, the material or poison used.  
**With, prep.** Na; united to the following word by coalition of vowels and becoming also *no* and *ne*, as,  
     1. *Namandla, with* strength.  
     2. *Nenkohliso, with* deceit.  
     3. *Nobulumko, with* wisdom.  
**Withdraw, v.t.** Ukuroxa; ukubuyisa; ukuziroxisa, to withdraw one's self.  
**Wither, to, v.i.** Ukubuna.  
**Withhold, to, v.t.** Ukubamba.  
**Within, prep.** Ngaphakathi; phakathi.  
**Without, prep.** Ngaphandle; phandle.  
**Withstand, to, v.i.** Ukuchasa.  
**Witness, n.** Ingqina, the person who testifies; ubungqina, evidence.
- Witness, to bear, v.t.** Ukungqina.  
**Wizard, n.** Igqwira; inkewu.  
**Woe, n.** Usizi; ilishwa.  
**Wolf, n.** Ingcuka.  
**Woman, n.** Umfazi; an old woman, ixhegokazi; intombi, a single woman.  
**Womanhood, n.** Ubufazi.  
**Womankind, n.** Isifazi.  
**Womb, n.** Isizalo; isibeleko.  
**Wonder, n.** Umangaliso; *v.i.* ukumangalisa, to cause wonder.  
**Wonderful, adj.** Mangalisayo.  
**Wonderfully, adv.** Ngokumangalisayo; ngokungumangaliso.  
**Wood, n.** Umthi, a tree; ihlathi, forest.  
**Woodpecker, n.** Isinqola-mthi.  
**Wool, n.** Uboya.  
**Woolly, adv.** Noboya.  
**Word, n.** Ilizwi; *plur.* amazwi.  
**Work, n.** Umsebenzi; *v.t.* ukusebenza.  
**Worker, n.** Umsebenzi.  
**World, n.** Ihlabathi; umhlaba; ilizwe.  
**Worm, n.** Umsundu; *plur.* imisundu.  
**Wormwood, n.** Umhlonyane.  
**Worry, v.t.** Ukukhathaza; ukufundulula, to banter.  
**Worship, n.** Ubhedesho, or umbhedesho.  
**Worship, to, v.t.** Ukubhedesha, also to pray; ukudumisa, to praise; ukukhunga, to supplicate.  
**Worthy, adj.** Fanelekile.  
**Worthless thing, n.** Intw' engento; impatshampatsha.  
**Wound, n.** Inxeba; *v.t.* ukulimaza.

- Wrangle, v.i.** Ukulwa ; ukuphi-kisana.  
**Wrap, v.t.** Ukusonga.  
**Wrapper, n.** Into yokusongela.  
**Wrath, n.** Umsindo ; ingqumbo.  
**Wreak, to, vengeance, v.t.** Ukuphindezela ngomsindo.  
**Wreath, n.** Umqhele, of hair only.  
**Wrench, v.t.** Ukuxhwila.  
**Wrest, v.t.** Ukuxhuzula ; ukuthi xhwi ; ukusombulula.  
**Wrestle, v.t.** Ukuzamana ; ukungqulana.  
**Wretched, adj.** Lusizi.  
**Wretchedness, n.** Usizi.
- Wriggle, v.i.** Ukunyamalaza ; ukupenapena.  
**Wring, v.t.** Ukukhama ; ukujika intamo, to wring one's neck.  
**Wrinkles, n.** Imibimbi.  
**Wrist, n.** Isihlahla.  
**Writhe, v.i.** Ukuthuthunjelwa.  
**Write, v.t.** Ukubhala.  
**Writer, n.** Umbhali.  
**Writing, n.** Umbhalo ; incwadi.  
**Wrong, adj.** Bi ; *n.* ububi ; isono.  
**Wrong, to do, v.t.** Ukona.  
**Wroth, adj.** Nomsindo omkhulu : nengqumbo enkulu.  
**Wrought, p.p.** Setyenziwe.  
**Wrung, p.p.** Khanyiwe.

## Y

- Yard, n.** Inyathelo elinye ; iyadi ; ibala lendlu.  
**Yawn, v.i.** Ukwakhama.  
**Ye, pron.** Nina ; ni.  
**Yea, adv.** Ewe.  
**Year, n.** Umnyaka ; unyaka.  
     Last year, nyakenye.  
     Year before last, nyakomnye.  
     Next year, unyaka ozayo.  
**Yearly, adv.** Iminyaka ngeminyaka.  
**Yearn, v.i.** Ukunxuba ; ukukhumbula.  
**Years, n.** Iminyaka.  
**Yeast, n.** Igwele ; imula.  
**Yell, v.i.** Ukumemeza ; ukukhala.  
**Yellow, adj.** Lubhelu ; mpofu ; mthubi.  
**Yelp, v.i.** Ukukhonkotha to bark.  
**Yes, adv.** Ewe.  
**Yesterday, adv.** Izolo ; izolo elinye, day before yesterday.
- Yet, conj.** Kanti ; noko ; ka, as alikafiki ixesha, the day has *not* yet come.  
**Yield, v.t.** Ukuvelisa, to bring forth, ukoyiseka, to submit.  
**Yoke, n.** Idyokhwe.  
**Yolk, of an egg, n.** Umthubi weqanda.  
**Yonder, adv.** Phaya.  
**You, pers. pron.** is expressed by *nina* in the full and emphatic form ; by *ni* as the verbal prefix when used with the verb, as *niyasebenza*, ye are working ; *nisaphikisana*, ye are still disputing.  
**Young, or new, adj.** Ntsha ; indodana, a young man.  
**Your, poss. pron.** Wakho, bakho, yakho, sakho, lwakho, etc., according to class of noun.

**Yourself**, *pron.* Ngokwakho ; ngokwakhe, him or herself.

**Yourselves**, *pron.* Ngokwenu ; ngokwabo, thamselves.

**Young man**, *n.* Umfana.

**Youth**, *n.* Ubutsha ; inkwenkwana, a small boy.

**Youthfully**, *adj.* Ngobutsha.

## Z

**Zeal or jealousy**, *n.* Ikhwcle.

**Zealous**, *adj.* Ukuba nenzondelelo.

**Zealously**, *adj.* Ngenzondelelo.

**Zebra**, *n.* Iqwara.

**Zigzag**, *n.* Igosogoso.

**Zinc**, *n.* Izinki.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

*The Prefix varies as the Class of Noun, as,*

One man,	Umntu omnye.
One horse,	Ihashe elinye.
One house,	Indlu enye.
Ten trees,	Imithi elishumi.

- 1, Nye.
- 2, Bini
- 3, Thathu
- 4, Ne.
- 5, Hlanu.
- 6, Thandathu.
- 7, Xhenxe.
- 8, Bhozo.
- 9, Thoba.
- 10, Shumi.
- 11, Shumi elinanye.
- 12, Shumi elinambini.
- 13, Shumi elinantathu.
- 14, Shumi elinane.
- 15, Shumi elinantlanu.
- 16, Shumi elinantandathu.
- 17, Shumi elinesixhenxe.
- 18, Shumi elinesibhozo.
- 19, Shumi elinethoba.
- 20, Amashumi amabini.
- 21, Amashumi amabini ananye.
- 22, Amashumi amabini anambini.
- 30, Amashumi amathathu.
- 40, Amashumi amane.
- 50, Amashumi amahlanu.
- 60, Amashumi amathandathu
- 70, Amashumi asixhenxe.
- 80, Amashumi asibhozo.
- 90, Amashumi alithoba.
- 100, Khulu.

102, Khulu clinambini.  
 200, Amakhulu amabini.  
 1000, Waka.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

*The Prefix varies at the Cases of Nouns, as,*

The first man	Umntu wokuqala.
The second house,	Indlu yesibini.
The tenth horse,	Ihashe leshumi.
The twentieth year,	Umnyaka wamashumi mabini.
First,	Kuqala.
Second,	Sibini.
Third,	Sithathu
Fourth,	Sine.
Fifth,	Sihlanu
Sixth,	Sithandathu
Seventh,	Sixhenxe.
Eighth,	Sibhozo.
Ninth,	Thoba.
Tenth,	Shumi.
Eleventh,	Shumi elinanye.
Twelfth,	Shumi elinambini.
Thirteenth,	Shumi elinantathu.
Fourteenth,	Shumi elinane.
Fifteenth,	Shumi elinantlanu.
Sixteenth,	Shumi elinantandathu.
Seventeenth	Shumi elinesixhenxe
Eighteenth,	Shumi elinesibhozo.
Nineteenth,	Shumi elinethoba.
Twentieth,	Mashumi mabini.
Twenty-second	Mashumi mabini anambini.
Thirtieth,	Mashumi mathathu.
Fortieth,	Mashumi mane.
Fiftieth,	Mashumi mahlanu.
Sixtieth,	Mashumi amathandathu.
Seventieth,	Mashumi asixhenxe
Eightieth,	Mashumi asibhozo.



Ninetieth,	Mashumi alithoba.
Hundredth,	Khulu.
Hundredth and first,	Khulu elinanye.
Two hundredth,	Makhulu mabini.
Thousandth,	Waka.

DAYS OF THE WEEK, &c.

SUNDAY,	ICawa.	TO-DAY,	Namhlanje.
MONDAY,	uMvulo.	TO-MORROW,	Ngomso.
TUESDAY,	Lwesibini.	DAY after to-	Ngoms ' omnye.
WEDNESDAY,	Lwesithathu	morrow,	
THURSDAY,	Lwesine.	YESTERDAY,	Izolo.
FRIDAY,	Lwesihlanu.	DAY before	Izolwelinye.
SATURDAY,	uMgqibelo.	yesterday,	

INTERNATIONAL NAMES OF THE MONTHS ADAPTED  
INTO XHOSA

JANUARY,	uJanuwari.	JULY,	uJulayi.
FEBRUARY,	uFebruari.	AUGUST,	uAgusti.
MARCH,	uMatshi.	SEPTEMBER,	uSeptemba.
APRIL,	uAprili.	OCTOBER,	uOktobha.
MAY,	uMeyi.	NOVEMBER,	uNovemba.
JUNE,	uJuni.	DECEMBER,	uDesemba.



